

**NOTICE OF REGULAR TOWN COUNCIL MEETING  
FOR THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS**



**AMENDED**

**MONDAY, AUGUST 21, 2023 AT 6:00 P.M.**

**LOCATION:**

**IN PERSON at 1401 FM 424, CROSS ROADS, TEXAS 76227**

**OR**

**VIRTUALLY by Zoom Meeting**

**<https://us02web.zoom.us/j/85166847500>**

**Meeting ID: 851 6684 7500**

**One tap mobile**

**+13462487799,,85166847500# US (Houston)**

**\*Note: All applicants should attend in person.**

1. Call to Order
2. Roll Call
3. Invocation – Mike Spence, Denton Bible Church
4. Pledge of Allegiance – Stephanie Housewright, Council Member
5. Citizens Input (Items on the agenda and not on the agenda)  
*If commenting via Zoom, please use the Raise Your Hand feature. Please state your full name before speaking. Please limit your comments to three minutes in duration. You are restricted from passing your time or any portion of unused minutes to another citizen for comment.*
6. Council Members' announcements and updates
7. Mayor's announcements and updates.
8. Updates; Discussion of the Same.
  - a. Town Administrator Announcements and Updates – Kristi Gilbert
  - b. Financial Reports – Kristi Gilbert
  - c. Building Permits and Development – Rodney Patterson & Kristi Gilbert
  - d. Law Enforcement – Shaun Short
  - e. Fire Department – Paul Rust
  - f. Committee Reports – MDD, Parks, Connectivity Committee, Historical Committee, Roads Committee

**CONSENT AGENDA**

9. Consider approval of the July 10, 2023 Council Meeting Minutes.
10. Consider approval of the June 2023 and July 2023 Financials.

11. Consider approval of awarding a contract for primary bank depository services to Independent Financial and authorizing the Mayor to negotiate and execute the associated contract.
12. Consider approval of a resolution authorizing the Mayor or Town Administrator to establish an account with Bank of America and designating signatories for the account.
13. Consider approval of a resolution suspending the September 1, 2023 effective date of CoServ Gas, Ltd.'s requested rate change to permit the Town time to study the request and establish reasonable rates, including utilizing legal and consulting services of Lloyd Gosselink Rochelle and Townsend, P.C. and requiring reimbursement of the Steering Committee of Cities Served by CoServ.
14. Consider approval of a resolution declaring Atmos Energy Corp., Mid-Tex Division rates to be unreasonable, adopting tariffs that reflect rate adjustments consistent with the negotiated settlement and finding the rates from the negotiated settlement to be just and reasonable and in the public interest.
15. Consider approval of a resolution finding that Oncor Electric Delivery Company LLC's application to increase rates within the Town of Cross Roads should be denied including utilizing legal and consulting services of Lloyd Gosselink Rochelle and Townsend, P.C. and requiring reimbursement of the Oncor Cities Steering Committee.
16. Consider approval of a contract for Environmental Health Inspections with Bradley Tucker Investments, LLC, dba Instant Inspector, and authorize the Mayor to execute the contract.
17. Consider approval of an ordinance adopting the 2018 International Building Code, 2018 International Residential Code, 2018 International Energy Conservation Code, 2015 International Mechanical Code, 2018 International Plumbing Code, 2018 International Fire Code, 2018 International Fuel and Gas Code and the 2017 National Electrical Code with local amendments.
18. Consider approval of a resolution amending the regular meeting schedule for the remainder of the 2023 calendar year.

### **REGULAR SESSION**

19. CONDUCT A PUBLIC HEARING, discuss and consider an application by Justin Brannan with School of Rock on behalf of property owner Bridgette Lily for a proposed text amendment to the Town of Cross Roads Comprehensive Zoning Regulations to expand the definition of "piano or musical instrument sales" to include instrument instruction activities to the definition of instrument sales.
20. Discuss and consider approval of a commercial building permit and elevations for a proposed Dollar Tree store in the Cross Roads Retail Addition generally described as property located north of US Hwy 380 and east of Walmart Dr. in the Villages of

Cross Roads Commercial development within the Town of Cross Roads. (2023-0524-02C)

21. Discuss the proposed Fiscal Year 2023-2024 budget.
22. Discuss and consider a resolution of appointments to the Planning and Zoning Commission, Municipal Development District, and Parks and Recreation Board.
23. Discuss and consider issues related to the Mill Creek Road project.

### **EXECUTIVE SESSION**

24. The Town Council may convene into Executive Session pursuant to Texas Government Code, annotated, Chapter 551, Subchapter D for the following:
  - a. Section 551.087 Deliberation Regarding Economic Development Negotiations – Project Alpha, Project Bravo, Project Charlie and Project Delta
  - b. Section 551.074 Personnel – Police Chief Performance Evaluation
  - c. Section 551.074 Personnel Matters – Planning and Zoning Commission and Municipal Development District board appointments
25. Take action as may be necessary or appropriate on matters discussed in Executive Session.

### **ADJOURN**

Future Meetings and Events:

All citizens are invited to participate; schedule may change.

- *Planning and Zoning Commission Meeting – Tuesday, September 5, 2023 at 7:00 p.m.*
- *Parks and Recreation Board Meeting – Wednesday, September 6, 2023 at 6:00 p.m.*
- *Municipal Development District Meeting – Thursday, September 14, 2023 at 6:00 p.m.*
- *Town Council Meeting – Monday, September 18, 2023 at 6:00 p.m.*

### **CERTIFICATION**

I, the undersigned authority, do hereby certify that this Public Meeting Notice was posted on the official bulletin board at the Town Hall of the Town of Cross Roads, Texas on or before Friday, August 18<sup>th</sup>, 2023, by 5:00 p.m., in accordance with Chapter 551, Texas Government Code.

A quorum of the Municipal Development District, Parks and Recreation Board and/or Planning and Zoning Commission may be present at the meeting and may participate in discussion on any of the items listed on the agenda at the discretion of the Mayor.

As authorized by Section 551.071 of the Texas Government Code, this meeting may be convened into closed executive session for seeking confidential legal advice from the Town Attorney on any agenda item listed herein.

This facility is wheelchair accessible and accessible parking spaces are available. For requests, please contact Town Hall at 940-365-9693. Reasonable accommodations will be made to assist your needs.

---

Donna Butler, Town Secretary

I certify that the attached notice and agenda of items to be considered by the Town Council of the Town of Cross Roads was removed by me from the front window of the Town of Cross Roads Town Hall, 1401 FM 424, Cross Roads, Texas, on the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2023.  
\_\_\_\_\_, Title: Town Secretary





**MINUTES OF REGULAR TOWN COUNCIL MEETING  
FOR THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS  
MONDAY, JULY 10, 2023 AT 6:00 P.M.  
LOCATION:  
IN PERSON at 1401 FM 424, CROSS ROADS, TEXAS 76227  
OR  
VIRTUALLY by Zoom Meeting**

1. Call to Order – **6:00 P.M.**
2. Roll Call: **Mayor Tompkins; Council Members Paus, Zuczek, King, Meek, and Housewright.**
3. Invocation – **Reverend Charles Stolfus, Denton Bible Church**
4. Pledge of Allegiance – **Steve Zuczek, Council Member**
5. Citizens Input – **None**
6. Council Members' announcements and updates
  - **King thanked the PD and Fire Chiefs, asking them to speak to how the heat may be affecting staff**
  - **Paus state he spoke to Dutch Bros. Coffee**
  - **Meek asked that attachments be numbered and future road improvement contracts have firm dates**
  - **Zuczek attended Dutch Bros. Coffee opening as an MDD Member and thanked PD and Fire**
7. Mayor's announcements and updates.  
**Dutch Bros. Coffee opening, listening devices available at Town meetings, TXDOT repairs on Moseley, Millcreek repair update, Founder's Day event, and request for board volunteers**
8. Updates; Discussion of the Same.
  - a. Town Administrator Announcements and Updates – **Kristi Gilbert gave commercial construction updates**
  - b. Financial Reports – **Kristi Gilbert stated Julie reports will be on August agenda**
  - c. Building Permits and Development – **Kristi Gilbert stated School of Rock submitted an application for a text amendment to the Code**
  - d. Law Enforcement – **Shaun Short explained the June PD Report**
  - e. Fire Department – **Paul Rust explained the June Fire and EMS Report**
  - f. Committee Reports – MDD, Parks, Connectivity Committee, Historical Committee, Roads Committee
    - **Paula Paus, for Parks, stated they were moving forward with Council's directives; storage, restroom, playground, grants, movie night and markets**

**CONSENT AGENDA**

9. Consider approval of the June 19, 2023 Council Meeting Minutes.
10. Consider a resolution declaring two (2) 2016 Chevrolet Tahoe's as surplus property and authorizing the disposal through an auction.

11. Discuss and consider an application for a technical site plan for the Caliber Carwash Addition, Block A, Lot 1 generally described as property located north of US Hwy 380 and east of Walmart Dr. in the Villages of Cross Roads Commercial development within the Town of Cross Roads. (2023-0508-03TSP)

**Motion to approve the Consent Agenda made by Paus;  
Second by Housewright;  
Passed unanimously.**

#### **REGULAR SESSION**

12. CONDUCT A PUBLIC HEARING, discuss and consider a proposed amendment to the Town of Cross Roads Comprehensive Zoning Regulations to provide for a definition of "Restaurant, with drive-through" and allow said use by special use permit in the C-2 Commercial zoning district.

**Mayor Tompkins opened the Public Hearing at 6:34 P.M.  
Town Administrator Gilbert briefed Council on Item.  
Mayor Tompkins closed the Public Hearing at 6:42 P.M.**

**Motion to approve the amendment made by Zuczek;  
Second by Meek;  
Passed unanimously.**

13. Discuss and consider a recommendation on a final plat application for property located just east of 10 Mesquite Ridge, within the Town of Cross Roads. (2023-0410-03FPLAT)

**Motion to approve the final plat made by Housewright;  
Second by Meek;  
Passed unanimously.**

14. Discuss and consider approval of an ordinance amending the Fiscal Year 2022-2023 adopted budget.

**Motion to approve ordinance amending Fiscal Year 2022-2023 adopted budget made by King;  
Second by Paus;  
Passed unanimously.**

15. Discuss the proposed Fiscal Year 2023-2024 budget.

**Discussion only.**

16. Discuss and consider approval of an ordinance amending Chapter 10 of the Town of Cross Roads Code of Ordinances related to Subdivision Regulations for the Town of Cross Roads and its extraterritorial jurisdiction, including the adopting of a submission checklist.

**Motion to approve ordinance amending Code of Ordinances related to Subdivision Regulations made by Meek;  
Second by Housewright;  
Passed unanimously.**

#### **EXECUTIVE SESSION**

17. The Town Council may convene into Executive Session pursuant to Texas Government Code, annotated, Chapter 551, Subchapter D for the following:

- a. Section 551.087 Deliberation Regarding Economic Development Negotiations – Project Alpha, Project Bravo and Project Charlie
- b. Section 551.074 Personnel – Town Administrator Performance Evaluation

**Council convened into Executive Session at 7:51 P.M.  
Council reconvened into Regular Session at 8:35 P.M.**

18. Take action as may be necessary or appropriate on matters discussed in Executive Session.  
**No action was taken.**

**ADJOURN – 8:35 P.M.**

---

T. Lynn Tompkins, Jr., Mayor

---

Donna Butler, Town Secretary



# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 10 p. 1 of 42

Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Consider action on the Town's monthly financial reports – June & July 2023.

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

The attached financials are the unaudited financials as of July 31, 2023. These financials reflect the budget amendment approved by the Council at the July 10, 2023 Council meeting. The report is reflective of ten months (83.3%) of the fiscal year. Most revenues should be tracking at 16.7% or lower, indicative of revenues at or exceeding budget projections. Most expenses should be tracking at 16.7% or higher, indicative of expenses at or lower than budget projections. Overall, general fund revenues are tracking at 10.89% and expenses are tracking at 22.62% with revenues exceeding expenses by \$22,104.35 for the month of July and \$952,817.81 for the fiscal year to date.

The following are exceptions of note:

- Infrastructure Inspection Fees is significantly higher due to the receipt of fees related to the Walmart expansion project.

Recommended Action:

Staff recommends approval.

Attachments:

FY 23 Revenues and Expenditures as of July 31, 2023

Balance Sheet as of June 30, 2023

June Transaction Detail

July Transaction Detail

Quarterly Sales Tax Report

8/7/2023 3:38 PM

Town of Cross Roads  
Revenue And Expense Report  
As of July 31, 2023

<b>100 - General</b>	Current Month Expense/Rev	Year To Date Expense/Rev	Current Year Budget	Budget Balance Remaining	% Balance Remaining	Prior Year YTD Balance	Prior Year FY End Bal.
<b>Revenue Summary</b>							
-	339,096.25	3,420,951.77	3,838,900.00	417,948.23	10.89%	3,279,120.40	4,203,448.35
Revenue Totals	<u>339,096.25</u>	<u>3,420,951.77</u>	<u>3,838,900.00</u>	<u>417,948.23</u>	<u>10.89%</u>	<u>3,279,120.40</u>	<u>4,203,448.35</u>
<b>Expense Summary</b>							
110-Administration	193,445.00	1,214,146.51	1,504,979.00	290,832.49	19.32%	1,200,573.03	1,355,045.69
210-Municipal Court	1,086.75	33,059.43	48,717.50	15,658.07	32.14%	23,189.47	30,952.17
310-Police	111,562.94	1,098,032.64	1,428,500.00	330,467.36	23.13%	1,048,099.50	1,284,896.43
410-Parks & Recreation	1,371.73	12,037.46	32,000.00	19,962.54	62.38%	9,912.87	16,764.74
510-Community Development	0.00	400.00	2,000.00	1,600.00	80.00%	600.00	600.00
520-Inspection	2,631.66	30,870.32	57,500.00	26,629.68	46.31%	23,185.43	34,709.29
610-Public Works	6,893.82	79,587.60	116,000.00	36,412.40	31.39%	34,464.11	90,853.75
Expense Totals	<u>316,991.90</u>	<u>2,468,133.96</u>	<u>3,189,696.50</u>	<u>721,562.54</u>	<u>22.62%</u>	<u>2,340,024.41</u>	<u>2,813,822.07</u>
Revenues Over(Under) Expenditures	<u>22,104.35</u>	<u>952,817.81</u>	<u>649,203.50</u>	<u>0.00</u>	<u>0.00%</u>	<u>939,095.99</u>	<u>1,389,626.28</u>
710-Transfers Out	70,911.98	394,606.73	0.00	(394,606.73)	0.00%	2,650,495.26	1,742,979.53

8/7/2023 3:38 PM

Town of Cross Roads  
Revenue and Expense Report  
As of July 31, 2023

100 - General	Department Revenue	Current Month Expense/Rev	Year To Date Expense/Rev	Current Year Budget	Budget Balance Remaining	% Balance Remaining	Prior Year YTD Balance	Prior Year FY End Bal.
<b>Sales Taxes</b>								
-40100 Sales Tax Revenue		272,739.55	2,715,474.44	3,050,000.00	334,525.56	10.97%	2,702,994.74	3,343,369.48
-40110 Mixed Beverage Tax Revenue		2,451.52	20,731.74	23,000.00	2,268.26	9.86%	18,000.13	24,075.62
Total Sales Taxes		275,191.07	2,736,206.18	3,073,000.00	336,793.82	10.96%	2,720,994.87	3,367,445.10
<b>Franchise Taxes</b>								
-40120 Franchise Tax Telecom		17.97	2,701.03	3,500.00	798.97	22.83%	2,811.76	4,543.39
-40121 Franchise Tax Waste		2,260.67	23,300.09	26,000.00	2,699.91	10.38%	11,613.95	29,158.63
-40122 Franchise Tax Electric		956.20	142,345.37	141,000.00	(1,345.37)	(0.95%)	98,155.14	99,623.08
-40123 Franchise Tax Gas		0.00	28,533.85	28,500.00	(33.85)	(0.12%)	19,620.64	19,620.64
-40124 Franchise Tax Mustang SUD		0.00	21,742.46	28,500.00	6,757.54	23.71%	14,163.41	26,837.37
Total Franchise Taxes		3,234.84	218,622.80	227,500.00	8,877.20	3.90%	146,364.90	179,783.11
<b>Licenses &amp; Permits</b>								
-40200 Development/Platting/Permit Fees		1,150.00	14,848.70	20,000.00	5,151.30	25.76%	30,989.79	32,878.32
-40201 Infrastructure Inspection Fees		25,942.57	95,015.41	72,000.00	(23,015.41)	(31.97%)	27,190.44	27,690.44
-40202 Residential Bldg Permits and Inspections		720.00	46,083.22	55,000.00	8,916.78	16.21%	111,788.79	120,209.72
-40203 Commercial Bldg Permits and Inspections		1,625.00	41,808.69	50,000.00	8,191.31	16.38%	47,923.10	54,204.30
-40204 Septic Permits and Fees		650.00	2,600.00	3,000.00	400.00	13.33%	6,440.00	7,090.00
-40206 Health Inspection and Fees		400.00	21,071.00	22,000.00	929.00	4.22%	15,850.00	16,058.00
-40207 Alcohol Permit/License		0.00	5,095.00	5,095.00	0.00	0.00%	1,455.00	1,455.00
-40208 Signs Permit and Fees		200.00	5,350.00	6,000.00	650.00	10.83%	2,750.00	4,250.00
Total Licenses & Permits		30,687.57	231,872.02	233,095.00	1,222.98	0.52%	244,387.12	263,835.78
<b>Court Revenue</b>								

-40210 Municipal Court Fines	14,714.58	147,023.10	178,000.00	30,976.90	17.40%	157,644.33	190,009.27
Total Court Revenue	14,714.58	147,023.10	178,000.00	30,976.90	17.40%	157,644.33	190,009.27
<u>Fines and Fees</u>							
-40300 Administrative Fees	877.00	21,634.31	24,000.00	2,365.69	9.86%	17,464.14	22,269.00
-40314 Credit Card Processing Fee	304.80	2,860.91	3,000.00	139.09	4.64%	2,646.25	3,136.16
-40330 Founder's Day Revenue	255.00	255.00	0.00	(255.00)	0.00%	0.00	0.00
Total Fines and Fees	1,436.80	24,750.22	27,000.00	2,249.78	8.33%	20,110.39	25,405.16
<u>Contributions</u>							
-40304 MDD Contribution	5,562.50	22,250.00	27,605.00	5,355.00	19.40%	18,272.25	18,272.25
Total Contributions	5,562.50	22,250.00	27,605.00	5,355.00	19.40%	18,272.25	18,272.25
<u>Investment Income</u>							
-40306 Interest Revenue	8,071.39	36,911.01	40,000.00	3,088.99	7.72%	6,488.46	7,334.30
Total Investment Income	8,071.39	36,911.01	40,000.00	3,088.99	7.72%	6,488.46	7,334.30
<u>Miscellaneous</u>							
-40315 Miscellaneous Income	260.00	1,558.06	1,200.00	(358.06)	(29.84%)	4,852.60	7,465.68
Total Miscellaneous	260.00	1,558.06	1,200.00	(358.06)	(29.84%)	4,852.60	7,465.68
<u>Donations</u>							
-40455 Donations	5,700.00	15,450.00	18,000.00	2,550.00	14.17%	0.00	0.00
Total Donations	5,700.00	15,450.00	18,000.00	2,550.00	14.17%	0.00	0.00
<u>Other Income</u>							
-40610 Insurance Proceeds	0.00	13,842.51	13,500.00	(342.51)	(2.54%)	0.00	0.00
Total Other Income	0.00	13,842.51	13,500.00	(342.51)	(2.54%)	0.00	0.00
<u>Transfers</u>							
-40910 Transfers In	(5,762.50)	(27,534.13)	0.00	27,534.13	0.00%	(39,994.52)	143,897.70
Total Transfers	(5,762.50)	(27,534.13)	0.00	27,534.13	0.00%	(39,994.52)	143,897.70
Total	339,096.25	3,420,951.77	3,838,900.00	417,948.23	10.89%	3,279,120.40	4,203,448.35
Total Revenue	339,096.25	3,420,951.77	3,838,900.00	417,948.23	10.89%	3,279,120.40	4,203,448.35

<b>100 - General</b>	<b>Department Expen</b>	Current Month Expense/Rev	Year To Date Expense/Rev	Current Year Budget	Budget Balance Remaining	% Balance Remaining	Prior Year YTD Balance	Prior Year FY End Bal.
<b><u>110-Administration</u></b>								
<b><u>Personnel and Benefits</u></b>								
110-51101 Payroll Expenses: Wages		39,392.41	382,019.04	475,000.00	92,980.96	19.57%	340,716.38	408,986.22
110-51102 Overtime		0.00	360.18	800.00	439.82	54.98%	0.00	0.00
110-51105 Longevity Pay		0.00	908.00	950.00	42.00	4.42%	795.00	795.00
110-51109 Auto Allowance		150.00	1,500.00	1,800.00	300.00	16.67%	1,500.00	1,842.70
110-51210 Payroll Expenses: Company Contributions: Retirement		3,196.71	30,303.11	47,500.00	17,196.89	36.20%	25,448.08	30,888.62
110-51215 Payroll Expenses: Taxes		3,025.02	29,497.66	37,250.00	7,752.34	20.81%	26,240.32	32,004.82
110-51216 Employee Health Benefits		3,525.00	38,973.82	47,000.00	8,026.18	17.08%	33,801.77	39,869.20
110-51220 Workers Compensation		0.00	2,986.83	500.00	(2,486.83)	(497.37%)	4,460.96	4,460.96
110-51230 Unemployment		0.88	71.32	1,600.00	1,528.68	95.54%	348.47	351.78
110-51250 Mileage Reimbursements-Non Tax		0.00	0.00	100.00	100.00	100.00%	0.00	0.00
110-51255 Miscellaneous Reimbursements		0.00	0.00	100.00	100.00	100.00%	0.00	0.00
Total Personnel and Benefits		<u>49,290.02</u>	<u>486,619.96</u>	<u>612,600.00</u>	<u>125,980.04</u>	<u>20.56%</u>	<u>433,310.98</u>	<u>519,199.30</u>
<b><u>Supplies</u></b>								
110-52014 Office Supplies		258.69	2,574.56	6,500.00	3,925.44	60.39%	6,205.77	7,722.83
110-52030 Postage		0.00	611.23	1,250.00	638.77	51.10%	613.73	624.74
110-52100 Minor Tools and Equipment		554.44	4,037.55	5,500.00	1,462.45	26.59%	2,483.09	3,156.30
Total Supplies		<u>813.13</u>	<u>7,223.34</u>	<u>13,250.00</u>	<u>6,026.66</u>	<u>45.48%</u>	<u>9,302.59</u>	<u>11,503.87</u>
<b><u>Contractual Services</u></b>								
110-53001 Accounting and Auditing Fees		10,500.00	13,843.75	15,000.00	1,156.25	7.71%	3,673.45	3,673.45
110-53002 Advertising and Promotion		432.19	7,306.44	12,000.00	4,693.56	39.11%	4,848.58	4,848.58
110-53004 Software		1,555.47	20,806.98	28,000.00	7,193.02	25.69%	25,941.73	34,175.22
110-53006 Codification Services		0.00	1,365.01	3,250.00	1,884.99	58.00%	0.00	1,680.00
110-53010 Property and Liability Insurance		0.00	3,424.64	3,425.00	0.36	0.01%	6,895.28	6,919.43
110-53012 Legal Fees		0.00	57,770.74	75,000.00	17,229.26	22.97%	61,499.18	84,951.31



110-53015 Dues and Subscriptions	649.98	818.94	1,000.00	181.06	18.11%	146.00	3,596.00
110-53016 Public Notices/Dues	435.60	1,676.46	2,500.00	823.54	32.94%	726.45	980.45
110-53022 Training and Travel	996.73	11,412.04	14,000.00	2,587.96	18.49%	7,444.36	12,161.90
110-53030 Credit Card Charge	354.40	2,409.94	3,000.00	590.06	19.67%	2,646.58	3,122.91
110-53033 Community Events	197.13	7,105.01	20,000.00	12,894.99	64.47%	0.00	0.00
110-53045 Lease and CAM Pmts - Town Hall	4,479.44	45,469.06	68,900.00	23,430.94	34.01%	49,787.95	58,186.49
110-53050 Careflite Services	0.00	1,536.00	2,000.00	464.00	23.20%	1,944.00	2,004.00
110-53055 City of Aubrey Library Fund	0.00	0.00	10,000.00	10,000.00	100.00%	0.00	10,000.00
110-53080 Engineering Services	1,754.94	2,121.72	30,000.00	27,878.28	92.93%	40,754.19	17,476.15
110-53083 Professional Services	5,961.05	50,694.39	83,500.00	32,805.61	39.29%	47,762.72	64,825.01
110-53110 Utilities	455.92	4,217.60	7,250.00	3,032.40	41.83%	4,228.07	5,574.19
110-53225 Interlocal Fire	113,075.00	452,300.00	452,300.00	0.00	0.00%	452,300.00	452,300.00
110-53610 Election Expense	0.00	3,803.15	4,200.00	396.85	9.45%	4,604.13	4,604.13
110-53800 Sales Tax Overpmt 12/21 to 5/25 Payback	1,692.00	16,920.00	20,304.00	3,384.00	16.67%	13,536.00	20,304.00
Total Contractual Services	<u>142,539.85</u>	<u>705,001.87</u>	<u>855,629.00</u>	<u>150,627.13</u>	<u>17.60%</u>	<u>728,738.67</u>	<u>791,383.22</u>
<u>Maintenance</u>							
110-54010 Building Maintenance/Cleaning	802.00	14,821.80	17,500.00	2,678.20	15.30%	4,278.01	6,523.56
110-54020 Vehicles Maintenance	0.00	479.54	1,500.00	1,020.46	68.03%	2,304.02	4,543.53
Total Maintenance	<u>802.00</u>	<u>15,301.34</u>	<u>19,000.00</u>	<u>3,698.66</u>	<u>19.47%</u>	<u>6,582.03</u>	<u>11,067.09</u>
<u>Capital Outlay</u>							
110-58007 Capital Improvements	0.00	0.00	4,500.00	4,500.00	100.00%	22,638.76	21,892.21
Total Capital Outlay	<u>0.00</u>	<u>0.00</u>	<u>4,500.00</u>	<u>4,500.00</u>	<u>100.00%</u>	<u>22,638.76</u>	<u>21,892.21</u>
Total Administration	<u>193,445.00</u>	<u>1,214,146.51</u>	<u>1,504,979.00</u>	<u>290,832.49</u>	<u>19.32%</u>	<u>1,200,573.03</u>	<u>1,355,045.69</u>
<b><u>.210-Municipal Court</u></b>							
<u>Personnel and Benefits</u>							
210-51101 Payroll Expenses: Wages	900.00	8,600.00	10,500.00	1,900.00	18.10%	4,900.00	6,098.50
210-51215 Payroll Expenses: Taxes	68.85	657.90	750.00	92.10	12.28%	367.20	481.95
210-51230 Unemployment	0.90	8.60	17.50	8.90	50.86%	5.60	7.10
Total Personnel and Benefits	<u>969.75</u>	<u>9,266.50</u>	<u>11,267.50</u>	<u>2,001.00</u>	<u>17.76%</u>	<u>5,272.80</u>	<u>6,587.55</u>
<u>Supplies</u>							

210-52014 Office Supplies	0.00	1,362.24	2,400.00	1,037.76	43.24%	1,571.45	1,789.40
210-52020 Court Supplies	0.00	100.47	750.00	649.53	86.60%	445.00	970.00
210-52030 Postage	0.00	515.00	1,700.00	1,185.00	69.71%	1,169.14	1,169.14
210-52100 Minor Tools and Equipment	117.00	295.47	1,000.00	704.53	70.45%	890.34	1,052.84
Total Supplies	<u>117.00</u>	<u>2,273.18</u>	<u>5,850.00</u>	<u>3,576.82</u>	<u>61.14%</u>	<u>4,075.93</u>	<u>4,981.38</u>
<u>Contractual Services</u>							
210-53004 Software	0.00	7,236.00	7,500.00	264.00	3.52%	562.95	562.95
210-53015 Dues and Subscriptions	0.00	0.00	250.00	250.00	100.00%	13.00	88.00
210-53022 Training and Travel	0.00	0.00	300.00	300.00	100.00%	200.00	525.00
210-53075 Prosecutor	0.00	14,283.75	22,500.00	8,216.25	36.52%	12,864.79	18,007.29
210-53076 Jury	0.00	0.00	350.00	350.00	100.00%	0.00	0.00
210-53077 Interpreter	0.00	0.00	400.00	400.00	100.00%	200.00	200.00
210-53078 Arrest/Jail Fees	0.00	0.00	300.00	300.00	100.00%	0.00	0.00
Total Contractual Services	<u>0.00</u>	<u>21,519.75</u>	<u>31,600.00</u>	<u>10,080.25</u>	<u>31.90%</u>	<u>13,840.74</u>	<u>19,383.24</u>
Total Municipal Court	<u>1,086.75</u>	<u>33,059.43</u>	<u>48,717.50</u>	<u>15,658.07</u>	<u>32.14%</u>	<u>23,189.47</u>	<u>30,952.17</u>
<u><del>310-Police</del> -----</u>							
<u>Personnel and Benefits</u>							
310-51101 Payroll Expenses: Wages	73,123.77	664,534.43	845,000.00	180,465.57	21.36%	637,497.95	775,073.14
310-51102 Overtime	1,623.55	32,346.16	40,000.00	7,653.84	19.13%	24,356.41	30,964.48
310-51105 Longevity Pay	0.00	488.00	1,750.00	1,262.00	72.11%	400.00	400.00
310-51108 Incentive Pay	0.00	3,750.00	3,750.00	0.00	0.00%	0.00	(1,615.15)
310-51210 Payroll Expenses: Company Contributions: Retirement	6,181.60	56,550.80	83,500.00	26,949.20	32.27%	49,731.56	62,049.81
310-51215 Payroll Expenses: Taxes	5,718.14	53,635.44	71,500.00	17,864.56	24.99%	50,666.41	62,708.59
310-51216 Employee Health Benefits	8,425.34	78,197.77	102,500.00	24,302.23	23.71%	71,561.37	87,242.77
310-51220 Workers Compensation	0.00	34,060.53	35,000.00	939.47	2.68%	27,825.14	27,825.14
310-51230 Unemployment	0.00	102.87	500.00	397.13	79.43%	2,166.07	2,174.35
Total Personnel and Benefits	<u>95,072.40</u>	<u>923,666.00</u>	<u>1,183,500.00</u>	<u>259,834.00</u>	<u>21.95%</u>	<u>864,204.91</u>	<u>1,046,823.13</u>
<u>Supplies</u>							
310-52005 Uniforms	317.23	4,484.88	7,500.00	3,015.12	40.20%	17,220.22	19,555.68
310-52010 Law Enforcement Supplies	1,856.97	3,572.89	4,000.00	427.11	10.68%	4,590.86	7,405.01
310-52014 Office Supplies	447.23	3,525.68	5,000.00	1,474.32	29.49%	4,231.11	5,595.16

310-52015 Evidence Supplies	0.00	1,500.86	2,000.00	499.14	24.96%	2,383.15	3,601.04
310-52030 Postage	112.22	1,150.25	1,500.00	349.75	23.32%	943.26	1,249.73
310-52050 Fuel	2,980.49	21,676.66	31,000.00	9,323.34	30.08%	26,498.98	36,118.06
310-52100 Minor Tools and Equipment	271.44	4,620.08	5,000.00	379.92	7.60%	5,462.46	7,873.72
Total Supplies	<u>5,985.58</u>	<u>40,531.30</u>	<u>56,000.00</u>	<u>15,468.70</u>	<u>27.62%</u>	<u>61,330.04</u>	<u>81,398.40</u>
<u>Contractual Services</u>							
310-53004 Software	535.44	4,728.82	15,500.00	10,771.18	69.49%	1,371.92	1,371.92
310-53010 Property and Liability Insurance	0.00	9,462.74	9,500.00	37.26	0.39%	5,634.02	5,829.39
310-53012 Legal Fees	0.00	0.00	2,500.00	2,500.00	100.00%	618.75	1,718.75
310-53015 Dues and Subscriptions	190.00	940.00	1,500.00	560.00	37.33%	365.00	365.00
310-53022 Training and Travel	1,646.13	6,105.84	9,500.00	3,394.16	35.73%	4,203.66	7,761.18
310-53033 Community Events	139.80	659.48	3,500.00	2,840.52	81.16%	4,553.23	5,145.24
310-53081 Information Technology Services	690.00	7,788.96	20,500.00	12,711.04	62.01%	20,422.99	14,698.00
310-53083 Professional Services	75.00	7,367.20	8,500.00	1,132.80	13.33%	12,875.80	18,891.80
310-53091 Landscaping	0.00	221.08	1,000.00	778.92	77.89%	0.00	631.97
310-53110 Utilities	774.92	7,033.68	10,000.00	2,966.32	29.66%	6,286.39	9,568.52
310-53130 Telephone Mobile	655.39	6,553.42	8,000.00	1,446.58	18.08%	6,310.55	7,622.01
310-53210 Animal Control	1,295.00	12,805.00	16,000.00	3,195.00	19.97%	11,500.00	14,950.00
310-53230 County Public Safety Contracts	0.00	29,981.11	30,000.00	18.89	0.06%	24,629.00	32,053.99
Total Contractual Services	<u>6,001.68</u>	<u>93,647.33</u>	<u>136,000.00</u>	<u>42,352.67</u>	<u>31.14%</u>	<u>98,771.31</u>	<u>120,607.77</u>
<u>Maintenance</u>							
310-54010 Building Maintenance/Cleaning	1,787.92	19,028.01	25,000.00	5,971.99	23.89%	8,958.11	14,298.73
310-54020 Vehicles Maintenance	2,715.36	21,160.00	28,000.00	6,840.00	24.43%	14,835.13	21,768.40
Total Maintenance	<u>4,503.28</u>	<u>40,188.01</u>	<u>53,000.00</u>	<u>12,811.99</u>	<u>24.17%</u>	<u>23,793.24</u>	<u>36,067.13</u>
Total Police	<u>111,562.94</u>	<u>1,098,032.64</u>	<u>1,428,500.00</u>	<u>330,467.36</u>	<u>23.13%</u>	<u>1,048,099.50</u>	<u>1,284,896.43</u>
<u><del>410-Parks &amp; Recreation</del></u>							
<u>Contractual Services</u>							
410-53002 Advertising and Promotion	206.52	206.52	2,000.00	1,793.48	89.67%	0.00	0.00
410-53035 Park Events	539.25	4,127.79	10,500.00	6,372.21	60.69%	4,687.17	8,892.17
410-53110 Utilities	<u>25.96</u>	<u>942.96</u>	<u>1,500.00</u>	<u>557.04</u>	<u>37.14%</u>	<u>530.70</u>	<u>847.57</u>

Total Contractual Services	771.73	5,277.27	14,000.00	8,722.73	62.31%	5,217.87	9,739.74
<b><u>Maintenance</u></b>							
410-54030 Park Maintenance	600.00	6,760.19	18,000.00	11,239.81	62.44%	4,695.00	7,025.00
Total Maintenance	600.00	6,760.19	18,000.00	11,239.81	62.44%	4,695.00	7,025.00
Total Parks & Recreation	1,371.73	12,037.46	32,000.00	19,962.54	62.38%	9,912.87	16,764.74
<b><u>.510-Community Development</u></b>							
<b><u>Contractual Services</u></b>							
510-53084 Code Enforcement Services	0.00	400.00	2,000.00	1,600.00	80.00%	600.00	600.00
Total Contractual Services	0.00	400.00	2,000.00	1,600.00	80.00%	600.00	600.00
Total Community Development	0.00	400.00	2,000.00	1,600.00	80.00%	600.00	600.00
<b><u>.520-Inspection</u></b>							
<b><u>Contractual Services</u></b>							
520-53080 Engineering Inspection Services	866.66	9,435.32	20,000.00	10,564.68	52.82%	8,115.43	10,449.29
520-53085 Res & Com Building Review & Insp	1,765.00	9,495.00	20,000.00	10,505.00	52.53%	1,550.00	8,800.00
520-53090 Sanitation Services	0.00	8,490.00	13,000.00	4,510.00	34.69%	13,520.00	15,460.00
520-53095 Fire Inspection Services	0.00	3,450.00	4,500.00	1,050.00	23.33%	0.00	0.00
Total Contractual Services	2,631.66	30,870.32	57,500.00	26,629.68	46.31%	23,185.43	34,709.29
Total Inspection	2,631.66	30,870.32	57,500.00	26,629.68	46.31%	23,185.43	34,709.29
<b><u>.610-Public Works</u></b>							
<b><u>Contractual Services</u></b>							
610-53060 Street Materials and Signs	1,649.57	5,406.77	8,000.00	2,593.23	32.42%	10,988.80	11,642.88
610-53065 Mowing and ROW Cleanup	4,954.17	38,293.20	55,000.00	16,706.80	30.38%	21,459.00	29,468.80
610-53070 Street Contract/Repairs	0.00	34,027.45	50,000.00	15,972.55	31.95%	181.66	47,381.66
610-53110 Utilities	290.08	1,860.18	3,000.00	1,139.82	37.99%	1,834.65	2,360.41
Total Contractual Services	6,893.82	79,587.60	116,000.00	36,412.40	31.39%	34,464.11	90,853.75
Total Public Works	6,893.82	79,587.60	116,000.00	36,412.40	31.39%	34,464.11	90,853.75

**710-Transfers Out** - - - - -

**Capital Outlay**

710-59100 Transfers Out	70,911.98	394,606.73	0.00	(394,606.73)	0.00%	2,650,495.26	1,742,979.53
Total Capital Outlay	<u>70,911.98</u>	<u>394,606.73</u>	<u>0.00</u>	<u>(394,606.73)</u>	<u>0.00%</u>	<u>2,650,495.26</u>	<u>1,742,979.53</u>
Total Transfers Out	<u>70,911.98</u>	<u>394,606.73</u>	<u>0.00</u>	<u>(394,606.73)</u>	<u>0.00%</u>	<u>2,650,495.26</u>	<u>1,742,979.53</u>
<hr/>							
Total Expense	<u>387,903.88</u>	<u>2,862,740.69</u>	<u>3,189,696.50</u>	<u>326,955.81</u>	<u>10.25%</u>	<u>4,990,519.67</u>	<u>4,556,801.60</u>

Town of Cross Roads  
Balance Sheet  
As of June 30, 2023

Account Type	Account Number	Description	Balance	Total
<b>100 - General</b>				
Assets				
	100-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated	365,826.69	
	100-10110	TexPool General Operating	1,674,947.13	
	100-11000	Accounts Receivable	(0.04)	
	100-11010	Accounts Receivable Other	592,222.84	
	100-11030	Franchise Fees Receivable	17,040.36	
	100-12010	Changes after Audit	3,143.70	
	100-14010	Prepaid Expenses	18,142.84	
	Total Assets		2,671,323.52	2,671,323.52
Liabilities				
	100-20100	Accounts Payable Consolidated	5,447.85	
	100-21100	Accrued Wages	1,349.85	
	100-21105	Accrued Wages Fiscal Year End	29,271.57	
	100-21125	FICA/Medicare Taxes Payable	(0.02)	
	100-21128	State Unemployment Taxes Payable	19.73	
	100-21130	Retirement Payable - Employee	(602.40)	
	100-21140	ER share & EE Dependent Dental Payable	(414.37)	
	100-21145	Employer Share & Dependent Medical Payable	1,177.78	
	100-21146	Life/AD&D Vol Life & ER share & Depend Vision Payable	(517.11)	
	100-23014	NEPD Credit Card Reimbursement	(4,752.40)	
	100-23015	NE Court Credit Card Reimbursement	(192.27)	
	100-24016	CARES Act Funds	582.81	
	100-24022	380 Agreement Payable	162,132.97	
	100-24040	State Court Fees	25,829.54	
	100-24045	Court Collection Fees	2,292.79	
	100-25020	MDD Payable	(2,371.30)	
	100-27000	Developer Deposits	9,091.95	
	100-27050	Police Escrow	5,712.67	
	Total Liabilities		234,059.64	
Fund Balance				
	100-30050	Fund Balance Beginning	428,134.71	
	100-30100	Fund Balance	1,401,494.04	
	Total Fund Balance		1,829,628.75	

	Total Revenue	3,081,855.52	
	Total Expenses	<u>2,474,836.81</u>	
	Current Year Increase (Decrease)	607,635.13	
	Fund Balance Total	1,829,628.75	
	Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>607,635.13</u>	
	Total Fund Balance/Equity	<u>2,437,263.88</u>	
Total Liabilities & Fund Balance			<u><u>2,671,323.52</u></u>
<b>150 - Legal Contingency Fund</b>			
Assets			
150-10053	Restricted Cash-Legal Contingency Fund xxx0167	152,414.68	
150-10139	Texpool Legal Contingency	<u>358,634.05</u>	
Total Assets		<u>511,048.73</u>	<u><u>511,048.73</u></u>
Fund Balance			
150-30100	Fund Balance	<u>505,964.70</u>	
Total Fund Balance		<u>505,964.70</u>	
	Total Revenue	5,084.03	
	Total Expenses	<u>0.00</u>	
	Current Year Increase (Decrease)	5,084.03	
	Fund Balance Total	505,964.70	
	Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>5,084.03</u>	
	Total Fund Balance/Equity	<u>511,048.73</u>	
Total Liabilities & Fund Balance			<u><u>511,048.73</u></u>

**210 - Municipal Development District**

## Assets

210-10090	MDD Cash / Checking xxx9987	271,039.98	
210-10138	Texpool Municipal Development District	773,208.10	
210-11020	Sales Tax Receivable	85,749.70	
Total Assets		<u>1,129,997.78</u>	
			<u><u>1,129,997.78</u></u>

## Fund Balance

210-30100	Fund Balance	<u>821,906.83</u>
Total Fund Balance		<u>821,906.83</u>

Total Revenue	362,621.10
Total Expenses	<u>54,530.15</u>
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	308,090.95
Fund Balance Total	821,906.83
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>308,090.95</u>
Total Fund Balance/Equity	<u>1,129,997.78</u>

Total Liabilities & Fund Balance	<u><u>1,129,997.78</u></u>
----------------------------------	----------------------------

**240 - Court Technology**

## Assets

240-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated	<u>1,282.19</u>	
Total Assets		<u>1,282.19</u>	
			<u><u>1,282.19</u></u>

## Liabilities

240-20100	Accounts Payable Consolidated	<u>(6,900.00)</u>
Total Liabilities		<u>(6,900.00)</u>

## Fund Balance

240-30100	Fund Balance	<u>10,498.33</u>
Total Fund Balance		<u>10,498.33</u>

Total Revenue	3,638.86
Total Expenses	<u>5,955.00</u>
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	(2,316.14)
Fund Balance Total	10,498.33
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>(2,316.14)</u>



		Total Fund Balance/Equity	8,182.19	
				1,282.19
<b>241 - Court Security</b>				
Assets				
241-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated	36,048.98		
Total Assets		36,048.98		36,048.98
Liabilities				
241-20100	Accounts Payable Consolidated	248.85		
Total Liabilities		248.85		
Fund Balance				
241-30100	Fund Balance	32,993.57		
Total Fund Balance		32,993.57		
		Total Revenue	4,342.08	
		Total Expenses	1,535.52	
		Current Year Increase (Decrease)	2,806.56	
		Fund Balance Total	32,993.57	
		Current Year Increase (Decrease)	2,806.56	
		Total Fund Balance/Equity	35,800.13	
				36,048.98
<b>242 - Truancy Prevention</b>				
Assets				
242-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated	22,330.88		
Total Assets		22,330.88		22,330.88
Fund Balance				
242-30100	Fund Balance	18,448.93		
Total Fund Balance		18,448.93		
		Total Revenue	3,881.95	
		Total Expenses	0.00	
		Current Year Increase (Decrease)	3,881.95	
		Fund Balance Total	18,448.93	

	Current Year Increase (Decrease)	3,881.95	
	Total Fund Balance/Equity	22,330.88	
Total Liabilities & Fund Balance			22,330.88

**243 - Jury Fund**

## Assets

243-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated	445.33	
Total Assets		445.33	
			445.33

## Fund Balance

243-30100	Fund Balance	368.80	
Total Fund Balance		368.80	

	Total Revenue	76.53	
	Total Expenses	0.00	
	Current Year Increase (Decrease)	76.53	
	Fund Balance Total	368.80	
	Current Year Increase (Decrease)	76.53	
	Total Fund Balance/Equity	445.33	
Total Liabilities & Fund Balance			445.33

**260 - LEOSE Fund**

## Assets

260-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated	1,577.67	
Total Assets		1,577.67	
			1,577.67

## Fund Balance

260-30100	Fund Balance	1,577.67	
Total Fund Balance		1,577.67	

	Total Revenue	0.00	
	Total Expenses	0.00	
	Current Year Increase (Decrease)	0.00	
	Fund Balance Total	1,577.67	
	Current Year Increase (Decrease)	0.00	
	Total Fund Balance/Equity	1,577.67	
Total Liabilities & Fund Balance			1,577.67

**265 - Police Donations**

## Assets

265-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated	7,033.26	
Total Assets		<u>7,033.26</u>	
			<u><u>7,033.26</u></u>

## Fund Balance

265-30100	Fund Balance	13,655.70
Total Fund Balance		<u>13,655.70</u>

Total Revenue	(362.80)
Total Expenses	<u>6,259.64</u>
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	(6,622.44)
Fund Balance Total	13,655.70
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>(6,622.44)</u>
Total Fund Balance/Equity	<u>7,033.26</u>

Total Liabilities & Fund Balance	<u><u>7,033.26</u></u>
----------------------------------	------------------------

**310 - Capital Improvement Fund**

## Assets

310-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated	90,388.02	
Total Assets		<u>90,388.02</u>	
			<u><u>90,388.02</u></u>

## Fund Balance

310-30100	Fund Balance	114,000.00
Total Fund Balance		<u>114,000.00</u>

Total Revenue	0.00
Total Expenses	<u>23,611.98</u>
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	(23,611.98)
Fund Balance Total	114,000.00
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>(23,611.98)</u>
Total Fund Balance/Equity	<u>90,388.02</u>

Total Liabilities & Fund Balance	<u><u>90,388.02</u></u>
----------------------------------	-------------------------

**320 - Park Improvement Fund**

## Assets

320-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated	90,387.68	
Total Assets		<u>90,387.68</u>	
			<u><u>90,387.68</u></u>

## Fund Balance

320-30100	Fund Balance	99,696.79
Total Fund Balance		<u>99,696.79</u>

Total Revenue	0.00
Total Expenses	<u>9,309.11</u>
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	(9,309.11)
Fund Balance Total	99,696.79
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>(9,309.11)</u>
Total Fund Balance/Equity	<u>90,387.68</u>

Total Liabilities & Fund Balance	<u><u>90,387.68</u></u>
----------------------------------	-------------------------

**330 - Vehicle/Equipment Replacement Fund**

## Assets

330-10000	Operating Cash Consolidated/ Vehicle Replacement	(58,876.70)
Total Assets		<u>(58,876.70)</u>

	<u><u>(58,876.70)</u></u>
--	---------------------------

## Liabilities

330-20100	Accounts Payable Consolidated	<u>(500.00)</u>
Total Liabilities		<u>(500.00)</u>

## Fund Balance

330-30100	Fund Balance	<u>13,281.73</u>
Total Fund Balance		<u>13,281.73</u>

Total Revenue	128,899.75
Total Expenses	<u>200,558.18</u>
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	(71,658.43)
Fund Balance Total	13,281.73
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>(71,658.43)</u>
Total Fund Balance/Equity	<u>(58,376.70)</u>

Total Liabilities & Fund Balance	<u><u>(58,876.70)</u></u>
----------------------------------	---------------------------

**350 - Public Safety Building fund**

## Assets

350-10020	Restricted Cash-Public Safety Fund xxx6978	206,942.76
-----------	--	------------

350-10140	Texpool Public Safety	486,939.32	
Total Assets		<u>693,882.08</u>	
			<u>693,882.08</u>

## Fund Balance

350-30100	Fund Balance	686,979.29	
Total Fund Balance		<u>686,979.29</u>	

Total Revenue	6,902.79
Total Expenses	<u>0.00</u>
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	6,902.79

Fund Balance Total	686,979.29
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>6,902.79</u>
Total Fund Balance/Equity	<u>693,882.08</u>

Total Liabilities & Fund Balance	<u>693,882.08</u>
----------------------------------	-------------------

**370 - Road Improvement fund**

## Assets

370-10054	Restricted Cash-Road Improvement Fund xxx8122	425,034.94	
370-10137	TexPool Road Improvements	<u>1,275,104.82</u>	
Total Assets		<u>1,700,139.76</u>	

1,700,139.76

## Fund Balance

370-30100	Fund Balance	1,477,344.79	
Total Fund Balance		<u>1,477,344.79</u>	

Total Revenue	370,311.20
Total Expenses	<u>147,516.23</u>
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	222,794.97

Fund Balance Total	1,477,344.79
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	<u>222,794.97</u>
Total Fund Balance/Equity	<u>1,700,139.76</u>

Total Liabilities & Fund Balance	<u>1,700,139.76</u>
----------------------------------	---------------------

**400 - PID #1 - Villages of Cross Roads**

## Assets

400-10040	Cash-PID #1 xxx1639	103,508.46	
Total Assets		<u>103,508.46</u>	

103,508.46

## Fund Balance

400-30100	Fund Balance	7,473.89
Total Fund Balance		7,473.89

Total Revenue	100,234.49
Total Expenses	4,199.92
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	96,034.57

Fund Balance Total	7,473.89
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	96,034.57
Total Fund Balance/Equity	103,508.46

Total Liabilities & Fund Balance	103,508.46
----------------------------------	------------

**510 - COVID Grant Fund**

## Assets

510-10055	Restricted Cash/COVID xxx9664	250,021.64
Total Assets		250,021.64

250,021.64

## Fund Balance

510-30100	Fund Balance	378,103.01
Total Fund Balance		378,103.01

Total Revenue	1,158.38
Total Expenses	129,239.75
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	(128,081.37)

Fund Balance Total	378,103.01
Current Year Increase (Decrease)	(128,081.37)
Total Fund Balance/Equity	250,021.64

Total Liabilities & Fund Balance	250,021.64
----------------------------------	------------

8/7/2023 4:17 PM

Town of Cross Roads  
Transaction Detail Report  
6/1/2023 - 6/30/2023

**100 - General****Account 100-110-51216**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/22/2023	6/22/2023	LTD - month of July 2023 invoice from Metlife	Metlife	PY692023	11630	134.03	0.00	134.03
Total						134.03	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-52014**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - T paper	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	36.99	0.00	36.99
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - easel pad/copy paper/clips	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	65.37	0.00	102.36
Total						102.36	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-52100**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/7/2023	6/7/2023	Service 4-21-23 to 5-21-23 CRPD and Town - Inv 19026544 Town	Xerox Corporation	18963820 - 19026	11604	268.88	0.00	268.88
Total						268.88	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53002**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/16/2023	6/15/2023	Mail July 2023 Newsletter - Qty 807	IMPress Graphics	97023	11617	432.19	0.00	432.19
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Printing service for July newsletter - Qty 825 (\$432.19 of chg pd already)	IMPress Graphics	97018	11645	622.49	0.00	1,054.68
Total						1,054.68	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53004**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Weblink hosting annual fee-archived minutes scanning (weblink to view docs)	MCCI, LLC	SC11606	11599	1,000.00	0.00	1,000.00
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Professional Capture & Archive Software - replaces Archive Social -	Smarsh Inc	101507	11603	1,338.75	0.00	2,338.75

Software - replaces Archive Social -  
May 2023 thru May 2024 software  
charge

Total	<u>2,338.75</u>	<u>0.00</u>
-------	-----------------	-------------

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53006**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Maintenance of code of ordinances on server - service to 1/31/2024	Franklin Legal Publishing	GC00120536	11639	1,065.14	0.00	1,065.14
Total						<u>1,065.14</u>	<u>0.00</u>	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53012**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Legal fees to 6/25/2023 -	Boyle & Lowry, L.L.P.	stmt to 6-25-2023	11644	1,581.25	0.00	1,581.25
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Legal fees to 6/25/2023 -	Boyle & Lowry, L.L.P.	stmt to 6-25-2023	11644	3,025.00	0.00	4,606.25
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Legal fees to 6/25/2023 -	Boyle & Lowry, L.L.P.	stmt to 6-25-2023	11644	137.50	0.00	4,743.75
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Legal fees to 6/25/2023 -	Boyle & Lowry, L.L.P.	stmt to 6-25-2023	11644	1,787.50	0.00	6,531.25
Total						<u>6,531.25</u>	<u>0.00</u>	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53016**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Various Legal Notices - May 2023 - Qty 8	Denton Record-Chronicle	523635	11602	388.70	0.00	388.70
Total						<u>388.70</u>	<u>0.00</u>	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53022**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Law & Procedure Manual	Texas Municipal Clerks Assoc	4777	11643	139.00	0.00	139.00
Total						<u>139.00</u>	<u>0.00</u>	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53030**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/2/2023	7/6/2023	Evolv fee for CC pmts processed in month of June \$288.71				288.71	0.00	288.71
6/8/2023	6/8/2023	Point Bank agreed to give back Ck printing charge they chg'd in May 2023				0.00	331.47	(42.76)



6/20/2023	7/6/2023	Evolv fee for CC pmts processed in month of June \$129.00				0.00	129.00	(171.76)
6/20/2023	7/6/2023	Evolv fee for CC pmts processed in month of June \$129.00 - Reversal				129.00	0.00	(42.76)
6/20/2023	7/6/2023	Fee that Evolv chg's Town for CC pmts processed in month of June \$129.00				129.00	0.00	86.24
Total						546.71	460.47	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53045**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	Rent for month July 2023 less credit for cleaning fee - Lease & Cam Town Hall - rent	West Crossroads LTD	2127	11624	3,447.50	0.00	3,447.50
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	Rent for month July 2023 less credit for cleaning fee - Lease & Cam Town Hall - Op'g exp	West Crossroads LTD	2127	11624	1,831.94	0.00	5,279.44
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	Rent for month July 2023 less credit for cleaning fee - credit for cleaing fee	West Crossroads LTD	2127	11624	0.00	800.00	4,479.44
Total						5,279.44	800.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53080**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/14/2023	6/14/2023	Halff Inv 10097479 share from Genl Op'g ckg \$7911.61-services to 5-31-2023 - May 2023 Engineering services	Halff Associates, Inc.	10097479 from Ge	11612	920.57	0.00	920.57
6/19/2023	6/19/2023	Write off Dev#2729 Bloomfield Homes balance in 100-27000 of \$(160.23) Credit 100-110-53080				0.00	160.23	760.34
Total						920.57	160.23	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53083**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - Retreat supplies: dividers, legal pads	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	67.42	0.00	67.42
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - Retreat supplies various	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	113.32	0.00	180.74
6/7/2023	6/7/2023	Retreat 06/01/23 to 06/03/23 Mileage Reimbmt - 482 miles .655 rate	Steven Zuczek	06/01/2023 milea	11607	315.71	0.00	496.45
6/14/2023	6/14/2023	Travel Reimbmt from Gen Fund - Tolls and Mileage 06-01-23 travel - Tolls	T. Lynn Tompkins	Travel Reimbmt fr	11611	11.96	0.00	508.41

6/14/2023	6/14/2023	Travel Reimbmt from Gen Fund - Tolls and Mileage 06-01-23 travel - Mlg Reimb 475 at .655	T. Lynn Tompkins	Travel Reimbmt fr	11611	311.13	0.00	819.54
6/14/2023	6/14/2023	Halff Inv 10097479 share from Genl Op'g ckg \$7911.61-services to 5-31-2023 - May 2023 Engineering services	Halff Associates, Inc.	10097479 from Ge	11612	298.56	0.00	1,118.10
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	month of June 2023-CRPD / Admin / Court / IT services - Admin PC and Cloud Backup	Local Circuit	4263	11623	164.00	0.00	1,282.10
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	month of June 2023-CRPD / Admin / Court / IT services - IT Services	Local Circuit	4263	11623	266.00	0.00	1,548.10
Total						1,548.10	0.00	

**100 - General**

**Account 100-110-53110**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Town and CRPD phones - month of May 2023 - Town 60%	Intermedia Inc.	2306118190	11597	252.82	0.00	252.82
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	Internet for Town Hall - acct 314371029 service to 07/05/2023	AT&T	service to 7/05/20	11620	161.29	0.00	414.11
6/22/2023	6/22/2023	Phone & Hot Spot service to 6/7/23 - CRPD and Admin - Admin	AT&T Mobility	287310473254x06	11627	41.81	0.00	455.92
Total						455.92	0.00	

**100 - General**

**Account 100-110-53610**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/7/2023	6/7/2023	Fee to oversee May 2023 elections	Denton County Elections	May 2023 election	11606	3,803.15	0.00	3,803.15
Total						3,803.15	0.00	

**100 - General**

**Account 100-110-53800**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/20/2023	6/20/2023	Record 100-40100 Rev with Sales Tax Overpmt Payback - 06/2023 Rev and Payback				1,692.00	0.00	1,692.00
Total						1,692.00	0.00	

**100 - General**

**Account 100-110-54010**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Cleaning service thru date 06/08/2023: CRPD Qty 1 / Court Qty 1 / Town Hall Qty 1 - Court chambers	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning to 06/05/	11598	50.00	0.00	50.00

6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Cleaning service thru date 06/08/2023: CRPD Qty 1 / Court Qty 1 / Town Hall Qty 1 - Town Hall	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning to 06/05/ 11598	175.50	0.00	225.50
6/15/2023	6/15/2023	CRPD - thru 6/15/23 Qty 1 / Town Hall - thru 6/15/23 Qty 1 - Town Hall	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning thru 6-15 11616	175.50	0.00	401.00
6/16/2023	6/15/2023	CRPD - thru 6/22/23 Qty 1 / Town Hall - thru 6/22/23 Qty 1 - Town Hall	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	cleaning thru 6/22, 11618	175.50	0.00	576.50
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Cleaning to 6/29//23 CRPD / Court / Town Hall - Court \$50 each	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning to 6/29/2 11646	50.00	0.00	626.50
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Cleaning to 6/29//23 CRPD / Court / Town Hall - Town Hall \$175.50 each	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning to 6/29/2 11646	175.50	0.00	802.00
Total					802.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-210-53075**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Legal fees to 6/25/2023 - Court	Boyle & Lowry, L.L.P.	stmt to 6-25-2023	11644	935.00	0.00	935.00
Total						935.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-51216**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/22/2023	6/22/2023	LTD - adjmt June 2023 - Ladusau	Metlife	PY692023	11630	26.00	0.00	26.00
6/22/2023	6/22/2023	LTD- month of July 2023 invoice from Metlife	Metlife	PY692023	11630	268.14	0.00	294.14
Total						294.14	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-52005**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/14/2023	6/14/2023	Inv 24752390 Shirt Pant vest Transfers and Hashmarks / Inv 24752434 Hashmarks - Inv 24752390	Galls LLC	24752390 / 2475	11614	603.10	0.00	603.10
6/14/2023	6/14/2023	Inv 24752390 Shirt Pant vest Transfers and Hashmarks / Inv 24752434 Hashmarks - inv 24752434	Galls LLC	24752390 / 2475	11614	48.96	0.00	652.06
Total						652.06	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-52014**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - Paper towels/trash bags/file folders/battery door	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	117.66	0.00	117.66
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - copy paper	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	68.43	0.00	186.09
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - soap refill/forks	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	54.73	0.00	240.82
Total						240.82	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-52050**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/5/2023	6/5/2023	CRPD - Fuel charges month of May 2023	WEX Bank	May 2023 Fuel cha	11594	2,855.95	0.00	2,855.95
Total						2,855.95	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-52100**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/7/2023	6/7/2023	Service 4-21-23 to 5-21-23 CRPD and Town - Inv 18963820 CRPD	Xerox Corporation	18963820 - 19026	11604	260.59	0.00	260.59
Total						260.59	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53022**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/5/2023	6/5/2023	Travel Reimbmt - receipts - 4/30/23 hotel stay but 5/8/23 CC pmt amt Kris paid had addtnl \$50 hotel chg'd for late fee so reimbs Kris diff in CC chg vs pmt he paid	Kris Tyler	Travel Reimbmt -	11592	50.00	0.00	50.00
Total						50.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53081**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	month of June 2023-CRPD / Admin / Court / IT services - CRPD	Local Circuit	4263	11623	690.00	0.00	690.00
Total						690.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53083**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/5/2023	6/5/2023	Computer search service - Month of May 2023	Transunion Risk and Alternative Data Solutions Inc	6265812-202305-	11591	75.00	0.00	75.00
Total						75.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53110**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	various accts service to 5/25/23 - CoServ acct xx2762 - CRPD		service to 5/25/20	11595	237.71	0.00	237.71
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Town and CRPD phones - month of May 2023 - CRPD 40%	Intermedia Inc.	2306118190	11597	168.55	0.00	406.26
6/7/2023	6/7/2023	CRPD internet service to 5/31/2023	ACC Business	231510465	11609	176.95	0.00	583.21
6/28/2023	6/28/2023	acct 0020077400001-CRPD / 0020081400002-Parks - - service to 6/15/2023 - CRPD	Mustang Special Utility District	CRPD / Parks - wa	11635	73.88	0.00	657.09
Total						657.09	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53130**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/22/2023	6/22/2023	Phone & Hot Spot service to 6/7/23 - CRPD and Admin - CRPD	AT&T Mobility	287310473254x06	11627	655.40	0.00	655.40
Total						655.40	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53210**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/14/2023	6/14/2023	Animal Control - service for month May 2023	All American Dogs	5149	11613	1,295.00	0.00	1,295.00
Total						1,295.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53230**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/15/2023	6/15/2023	Annually \$22,556.10 - Pmt 4 of 4 FY 22-23 Dispatch Fees - Sheriff's office communications agrmt	Denton County	pmt 4 of 4 FY 22-2	11615	5,639.03	0.00	5,639.03
Total						5,639.03	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-54010**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/5/2023	6/5/2023	CRPD Lawn Application #2	Granulawn	110346	11589	125.50	0.00	125.50

6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Cleaning service thru date 06/08/2023: CRPD Qty 1 / Court Qty 1 / Town Hall Qty 1 - CRPD	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning to 06/05/ 11598		150.00	0.00	275.50
6/15/2023	6/15/2023	CRPD - thru 6/15/23 Qty 1 / Town Hall - thru 6/15/23 Qty 1 - CRPD	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning thru 6-15 11616		150.00	0.00	425.50
6/16/2023	6/15/2023	CRPD - thru 6/22/23 Qty 1 / Town Hall - thru 6/22/23 Qty 1 - CRPD	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	cleaning thru 6/22, 11618		150.00	0.00	575.50
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	Plumbing: Install new Instant hot water htr - Chamber area RR and wax seal women's CRPD RR	CMS Mechanical Services Inc	97334 11625		636.52	0.00	1,212.02
6/28/2023	6/28/2023	Pest Control - service date 06/19/2023	A Smart Pest Control	24878 11633		125.00	0.00	1,337.02
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Cleaning to 6/29//23 CRPD / Court / Town Hall - CRPD \$150 each	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning to 6/29/2 11646		150.00	0.00	1,487.02
Total						1,487.02	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-54020**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/5/2023	6/5/2023	services at Providence auto - Inv 7111 7117 7118 - 2016 Chev - oil change inv 7111	Providence Automotive LLC	7111/ 7117 / 7118 11590		89.96	0.00	89.96
6/5/2023	6/5/2023	services at Providence auto - Inv 7111 7117 7118 - 2023 Chev - inspection	Providence Automotive LLC	7111/ 7117 / 7118 11590		7.00	0.00	96.96
6/5/2023	6/5/2023	services at Providence auto - Inv 7111 7117 7118 - 2023 Chev - inspection	Providence Automotive LLC	7111/ 7117 / 7118 11590		7.00	0.00	103.96
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	A/C repair: Refrigerant and expansion valve - 2018 Chev Tahoe	Providence Automotive LLC	7210	11626	350.01	0.00	453.97
6/28/2023	6/28/2023	Oil change - 2018 Chev Tahoe	Providence Automotive LLC	7083	11636	89.96	0.00	543.93
6/28/2023	6/28/2023	Oil Change - 2018 Chev Tahoe	Fifth Gear	5-000-226	11634	89.73	0.00	633.66
Total						633.66	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-410-53035**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - Parks - ice chest	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	109.99	0.00	109.99
6/7/2023	6/7/2023	4 week Rental 6/7/23 to 7/4/23 - Parks	Texas Johns	167394	11605	89.25	0.00	199.24
Total						199.24	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-410-53110**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	various accts service to 5/25 - acct xx2764 - Parks	CoServ	service to 5/25/20	11595	25.29	0.00	25.29
6/28/2023	6/28/2023	acct 0020077400001-CRPD / 0020081400002-Parks - - service to 6/15/2023 - Parks	Mustang Special Utility District	CRPD / Parks - wa	11635	29.96	0.00	55.25
Total						55.25	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-410-54030**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/14/2023	6/14/2023	Inv 2830 - Mowing Week Beg 06/12/2023 - Parks	North Texas Mow & Weed Control	2830	11610	300.00	0.00	300.00
6/28/2023	6/28/2023	Service for 2 weeks beginning 6/26/23 - Mowing Park	North Texas Mow & Weed Control	3143	11632	300.00	0.00	600.00
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	General Tree Work (pruning, cleanup, remove deadwood)	MD Golden Tree	192460	11641	425.00	0.00	1,025.00
Total						1,025.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-520-53080**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/14/2023	6/14/2023	Half Inv 10097479 share from Genl Op'g ckg \$7911.61-services to 5-31-2023 - May 2023 Engineering services	Half Associates, Inc.	10097479 from Ge	11612	1,605.95	0.00	1,605.95
Total						1,605.95	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-520-53085**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	April 2023 26 residential insp's / 6 comml insp's / 1 permit plan review - Residential 26 at \$70	SAFEbuilt LLC	97973	11601	1,820.00	0.00	1,820.00
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	April 2023 26 residential insp's / 6 comml insp's / 1 permit plan review - Commercial 6 at \$85	SAFEbuilt LLC	97973	11601	510.00	0.00	2,330.00
Total						2,330.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-520-53090**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	April 2023 26 residential insp's / 6 comml insp's / 1 permit plan review - 1 plan review	SAFEbuilt LLC	97973	11601	450.00	0.00	450.00
6/7/2023	6/7/2023	Inspections to 5/31/2023 Qty 41 Health / Qty 1 Brass Tap Plan	John Glover	May 2023 health ir	11608	3,280.00	0.00	3,730.00

6/7/2023	6/7/2023	health / Qty 1 Brass Tap Plan Review - Health Insp's Inspections to 5/31/2023 Qty 41	John Glover	May 2023 health ir 11608		100.00	0.00	3,830.00
6/29/2023	6/29/2023	Health / Qty 1 Brass Tap Plan Review - Plan Review acct 620266 Sanitation Service fee - 1 permit inv WTR0062828	Texas Commission On Environmental Quality	WTR0062828 11642		10.00	0.00	3,840.00
Total						3,840.00	0.00	

**100 - General** **Account 100-610-53060**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - Paving Stencil / Sign Hardware	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	431.20	0.00	431.20
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	Chg'd on acct May 2023 - Traffic paint/paint roller covers	Amazon Capital Services	May 2023 charges	11596	48.98	0.00	480.18
Total						480.18	0.00	

**100 - General** **Account 100-610-53065**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	2 week period - contract labor payment 05/22/23 to 06/02/23	Billy Joe Lerma	2 week period - co	11600	1,800.00	0.00	1,800.00
6/21/2023	6/21/2023	Billy Lerma - contract 06/05/23 thru 06/16/23 40 hours \$1800	Billy Joe Lerma	Billy Lerma - contr	11621	1,800.00	0.00	3,600.00
Total						3,600.00	0.00	

**100 - General** **Account 100-610-53070**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/12/2023	6/12/2023	Crctn to Road Improvmt EXPENSE acct 2 May A-P inv's out of Gen'l -AP- 3584- already reimbsd Gen'l the cash				0.00	44,967.60	(44,967.60)
6/12/2023	6/12/2023	Crctn to Road Improvmt EXPENSE acct 2 May A-P inv's out of Gen'l - AP-3994- already reimbsd Gen'l the cash				0.00	4,996.40	(49,964.00)
Total						0.00	49,964.00	

**100 - General** **Account 100-610-53110**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	various accts service to 5/25/23 acct xx2769 - light	- CoServ	service to 5/25/20	11595	11.23	0.00	11.23
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	various accts service to 5/25 acct xx2765 - light	- CoServ	service to 5/25/20	11595	15.51	0.00	26.74
6/6/2023	6/6/2023	various accts service to 5/25 acct xx2766 - light	- CoServ	service to 5/25/20	11595	15.51	0.00	42.25



6/6/2023	6/6/2023	various accts service to 5/25 - CoServ	service to 5/25/20 11595	31.02	0.00	73.27
		acct xx2767 - light				
			Total	<u>73.27</u>	<u>0.00</u>	

**100 - General****Account 100-710-59100**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
6/12/2023	6/12/2023	Crctn to Road Improvmt EXPENSE				49,964.00	0.00	49,964.00
		acct 2 May A-P inv's out of Gen'l -						
		already reimbsd Genl the cash						
6/20/2023	6/20/2023	Trsf Out debit - 14.29% of \$\$				37,152.50	0.00	87,116.50
		credited to 100-40100 June/2023 to						
		100-40100 Revenue moved to 370-						
		10054 Bk acct xxx8122						
			Total			<u>87,116.50</u>	<u>0.00</u>	

8/7/2023 4:26 PM

Town of Cross Roads  
Transaction Detail Report  
7/1/2023 - 7/31/2023

**100 - General****Account 100-110-51101**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	cost to mail August 2023 newsletter - Qty 807	IMPress Graphics	97396	11689	449.47	0.00	449.47
7/26/2023	8/2/2023	Crctn to JE-Genl ckg ck#11689- effective 08/23 Newsltr related s/be				0.00	449.47	0.00
7/26/2023	8/7/2023	MDD Exp and MDD ckg Crctn to JE-Genl ckg ck#11689- effective 08/23 Newsltr related s/be				449.47	0.00	449.47
7/26/2023	8/7/2023	MDD Exp and MDD ckg - Reversal						
7/26/2023	8/7/2023	Crct A-P s/not be wages acct and record MDD reimb Genl print newsltr inv pd to Impress Graphics				0.00	449.47	0.00
Total						898.94	898.94	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-51216**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/20/2023	7/20/2023	LTD - Admin	Metlife	PY7212023	11683	134.03	0.00	134.03
Total						134.03	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-52014**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various depts Amz June charges - Window Tint/P towels/copy paper/stickee notes	Amazon Capital Services	June 2023 Amz inv	11653	139.23	0.00	139.23
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Vistaprint, Nametagwizard	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	93.26	0.00	232.49
Total						232.49	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-52100**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Lease Payment all dept's Postage machine - May June July 2023 - Town Hall	Pitney Bowes Global Financial Services LLC	3317734662	11662	57.50	0.00	57.50
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Service for copier machine thru 6/21/23 - CRPD and Town Hall - Town Hall acct 726102197	Xerox Corporation	019191599 / 019111670		496.94	0.00	554.44
Total						554.44	0.00	

July Transactio Detail 1of 11

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53001**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Audit services for YE 09/30/2022 - Town of Cross Roads books	MWH Group P. C.	47025	11661	10,500.00	0.00	10,500.00
Total						10,500.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53002**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Impress Graphics	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	432.19	0.00	432.19
Total						432.19	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53004**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - My QRcode, Malchimp, Docusign,	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	432.98	0.00	432.98
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Drop Box annual subsription pmt	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	1,080.00	0.00	1,512.98
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Doc U Sign / Mail Chimp	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	42.49	0.00	1,555.47
Total						1,555.47	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53015**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Denton Record Chronicle	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	8.99	0.00	8.99
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	acct C-1219 member fee to 9-30-2024 for Town - 10-1-2023 to 9-30-2024	Texas Municipal League	acct C-1219 memt	11678	632.00	0.00	640.99
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Denton Rcd Chronicle	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	8.99	0.00	649.98
Total						649.98	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53016**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	acct 635 - Various legal notices 6-4-23 to 6-28-23	Denton Record-Chronicle	0623635	11676	435.60	0.00	435.60
Total						435.60	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53022**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - ICMA, Smartsign	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	517.73	0.00	517.73

7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - TX Munic Clerks	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7 11691		380.00	0.00	897.73
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - American Planning	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7 11691		99.00	0.00	996.73
Total						996.73	0.00	

**100 - General** **Account 100-110-53030**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/3/2023	8/7/2023	Fee that Evolv chg's Town for CC pmts processed in month of June (chg hits following month \$331.43				331.43	0.00	331.43
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Impress Graphics, Denton Record Chronicle	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	22.97	0.00	354.40
Total						354.40	0.00	

**100 - General** **Account 100-110-53033**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Eventcreate	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	96.00	0.00	96.00
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - DFW Party Rental	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7 11691		101.13	0.00	197.13
Total						197.13	0.00	

**100 - General** **Account 100-110-53045**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	August 2023 rent - Lease and Cam Town Hall rent	West Crossroads LTD	2128	11679	3,447.50	0.00	3,447.50
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	August 2023 rent - Lease and Cam Town Hall Op'g Exp	West Crossroads LTD	2128	11679	1,831.94	0.00	5,279.44
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	August 2023 rent - credit taken for cleaning fee	West Crossroads LTD	2128	11679	0.00	800.00	4,479.44
Total						5,279.44	800.00	

**100 - General** **Account 100-110-53080**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Halff Gen'l Op'g share of Inv 10099348 Engineering fees - June 2023 chgs	Halff Associates, Inc.	10099348	Genl ck 11659	1,754.94	0.00	1,754.94
Total						1,754.94	0.00	

**100 - General** **Account 100-110-53083**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Vistaprint, Office Depot, 54th street, Taco Casa	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	5,289.57	0.00	5,289.57

		Depot, 34th Street, Taco Casa, Courtyard Austin, Texas Roadhouse, El Rincon						
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	thru July 2023 CRPD services and Town Hall - Admin cloud backup	Local Circuit	4326	11672	164.00	0.00	5,453.57
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	thru July 2023 CRPD services and Town Hall - IT Services	Local Circuit	4326	11672	308.00	0.00	5,761.57
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Flowers.com / Facebk	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	199.48	0.00	5,961.05
Total						5,961.05	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53110**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	Town & CRPD phones - month of June 2023 - Town 60%	Intermedia Inc.	1720107	11649	252.82	0.00	252.82
7/24/2023	7/24/2023	Internet for Town Hall-service to 8/05/2023	AT&T	service to 8-5-23	11686	161.29	0.00	414.11
7/24/2023	7/24/2023	Phone and Hot Spot - CRPD and Admin service to 7-7-23 - - Admin Town	AT&T Mobility	287310473254X07	11687	41.81	0.00	455.92
Total						455.92	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53225**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/3/2023	7/3/2023	Town of Little Elm qutrlly \$113,075.00 - Fire/EMS - July Aug Sept 2023	Town of Little Elm	Q4 Fire/EMS 2023	11647	113,075.00	0.00	113,075.00
Total						113,075.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-53800**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/27/2023	7/27/2023	Record 100-40100 Rev with Sales Tax Overpmt Payback -07/2023 Rev and Payback				1,692.00	0.00	1,692.00
Total						1,692.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-110-54010**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	CRPD / Twon Hall - Cleanings thru 07-06-23 - Town Hall \$175.50 each	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning thru 7-6-	11650	175.50	0.00	175.50
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	all depts cleaning thru 7-13-23: CRPD / Court Chambers / Town Hall - Court Chambers	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning thru 07-1	11669	50.00	0.00	225.50
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	all depts cleaning thru 7-13-23: CRPD / Court Chambers / Town Hall	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning thru 07-1	11669	175.50	0.00	401.00

7/18/2023	7/18/2023	CRPD / Court Chambers / Town Hall - Town Hall Cleaning CRPD \$150 / Town Hall \$175.50 thru 07-20-2023 - Town Hall	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	cleaning to 07-20- 11673	175.50	0.00	576.50
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	Cleaning to 7-27-23: CRPD , Court Chambers, Town Hall - Court Chambers Qty 1	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning to 7-27-2 11694	50.00	0.00	626.50
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	Cleaning to 7-27-23: CRPD , Court Chambers, Town Hall - Town Hall Qty 1	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning to 7-27-2 11694	175.50	0.00	802.00
Total					802.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-210-52100**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Lease Payment all dept's Postage machine - May June July 2023 - Court	Pitney Bowes Global Financial Services LLC	3317734662	11662	117.00	0.00	117.00
Total						117.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-51216**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/20/2023	7/20/2023	LTD - CRPD	Metlife	PY7212023	11683	268.14	0.00	268.14
Total						268.14	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-52005**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Wichita Alterations	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	159.13	0.00	159.13
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Reversible raincoat - Qty 1	Galls LLC	024985953	11666	158.10	0.00	317.23
Total						317.23	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-52010**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/26/2023	8/7/2023	Crtn Inv 3440 Stolz Telecom-TP9655 Portable Radio and install s/be 100- 310-52010				1,856.97	0.00	1,856.97
Total						1,856.97	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-52014**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various depts Amz June charges - I phone chargers(3)/P plates/hand	Amazon Capital Services	June 2023 Amz inv 11653		290.21	0.00	290.21

cleaner/note pads/T paper/P  
towels/file folders/copy paper/trash  
bags/tbcls cloth(3)/bulb

7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Amazon	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	13.26	0.00	303.47
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Wal Mart	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	143.76	0.00	447.23
Total						447.23	0.00	

**100 - General Account 100-310-52030**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - USPS	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	68.90	0.00	68.90
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - USPS	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	43.32	0.00	112.22
Total						112.22	0.00	

**100 - General Account 100-310-52050**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	Fuel - month of June 2023 charges - CRPD	WEX Bank	June-2023 charges	11657	2,980.49	0.00	2,980.49
Total						2,980.49	0.00	

**100 - General Account 100-310-52100**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Lease Payment all dept's Postage machine - May June July 2023 - CRPD	Pitney Bowes Global Financial Services LLC	3317734662	11662	23.80	0.00	23.80
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Service for copier machine thru 6/21/23 - CRPD and Town Hall - CRPD acct 101342699	Xerox Corporation	019191599 / 0191	11670	247.64	0.00	271.44
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	TP9655 Portable Radio and install / Programming	Stolz Telecom Inc.	3440	11695	1,856.97	0.00	2,128.41
7/26/2023	8/7/2023	Crtn Inv 3440 Stolz Telecom-TP9655 Portable Radio and install s/be 100-310-52010				0.00	1,856.97	271.44
Total						2,128.41	1,856.97	

**100 - General Account 100-310-53004**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	thru July 2023 CRPD services and Town Hall - CRPD Prorated Microsoft License to 09/2023 1 license	Local Circuit	4326	11672	535.44	0.00	535.44
Total						535.44	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53015**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - IACP	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	190.00	0.00	190.00
Total						190.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53022**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Hippo Burgers, Brisket House, Chick Fil A, Chipotle, Goose Co BBQ	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	95.56	0.00	95.56
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - EZ Tag	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	8.00	0.00	103.56
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Hampton Inn / Chick Fil A / TX tag / EZ Tag	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	483.57	0.00	587.13
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	Annual Subscription - Qty 11 - virtual training courses renewal - subscription thru 9/22/2024	Virtual Academy	VA10816	11697	759.00	0.00	1,346.13
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	Annual Dues - 3/2023 to 02/2024 - Training Provider	The Center for American and Int'l Law	1244631-02-2024	11696	125.00	0.00	1,471.13
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	Cybercrime Cert - G. Dewberry - CRN# 75581	Collin College	S0323256	11692	175.00	0.00	1,646.13
Total						1,646.13	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53033**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Chick Fil A	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	139.80	0.00	139.80
Total						139.80	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53081**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	thru July 2023 CRPD services and Town Hall - CRPD month of July services	Local Circuit	4326	11672	690.00	0.00	690.00
Total						690.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53083**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	Computer search service - month of June 2023	Transunion Risk and Alternative Data Solutions Inc	6265812-202306-	11656	75.00	0.00	75.00



Total 75.00 0.00

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53110**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	Town & CRPD phones - month of June 2023 - CRPD 40%	Intermedia Inc.	1720107	11649	168.54	0.00	168.54
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various accts service to 6/24/23 - CoServ acct xx2762 - CRPD		5/26 to 6/24/23	11652	429.43	0.00	597.97
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	CRPD internet service to 6/30/2023	ACC Business	231810465	11671	176.95	0.00	774.92
Total						774.92	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53130**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/24/2023	7/24/2023	Phone and Hot Spot - CRPD and Admin service to 7-7-23 - - CRPD	AT&T Mobility	287310473254X07	11687	655.39	0.00	655.39
Total						655.39	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-53210**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Animal Control - service for month June 2023	All American Dogs	5178	11665	1,295.00	0.00	1,295.00
Total						1,295.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-54010**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	CRPD / Twon Hall - Cleanings thru 07-06-23 - CRPD \$150 each	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning thru 7-6-	11650	150.00	0.00	150.00
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - McCoys	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	292.92	0.00	442.92
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	Added 2 lbs freon to system - checked for leaks	ACE Heating & Air Conditioning, Inc.	37413	11655	200.00	0.00	642.92
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	all depts cleaning thru 7-13-23: CRPD / Court Chambers / Town Hall - CRPD	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning thru 07-1	11669	150.00	0.00	792.92
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	Replaced compressor on aerobic septic system	Starr Wastewater Systems	8213	11674	695.00	0.00	1,487.92
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	Cleaning CRPD \$150 / Town Hall \$175.50 thru 07-20-2023 - CRPD	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	cleaning to 07-20-	11673	150.00	0.00	1,637.92
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	Cleaning to 7-27-23: CRPD , Court Chambers, Town Hall - CRPD Qty 1	Maid Up Cleaners LLC	Cleaning to 7-27-2	11694	150.00	0.00	1,787.92
Total						1,787.92	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-310-54020**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various depts Amz June charges - Halogen uato headlight bulb	Amazon Capital Services	June 2023 Amz inv	11653	23.75	0.00	23.75
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - RMA Toll, Qutozone, Deant Co Svc Fee, Car Wash	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	112.59	0.00	136.34
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	2018 Chev: Inv 7493 replace front brakes and motor mount / Inv 7523 Transmission oil valve - Inv 7493	Providence Automotive LLC	7493 / 7523	11667	1,345.44	0.00	1,481.78
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	2018 Chev: Inv 7493 replace front brakes and motor mount / Inv 7523 Transmission oil valve - Inv 7523	Providence Automotive LLC	7493 / 7523	11667	351.83	0.00	1,833.61
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Lic plate SPT3281 registr renewal	Denton County Tax Assessor/Collector	Lic plate SPT3281	11668	8.25	0.00	1,841.86
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	2015 Ford Super Duty Truck state inspection	Providence Automotive LLC	7576	11677	25.50	0.00	1,867.36
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Car wash	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	80.00	0.00	1,947.36
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	2020 Chev Tahoe - Oil Chg / Front Brake Pads and Rotors replaced - Oil Chg	Fifth Gear	5000334	11693	83.00	0.00	2,030.36
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	2020 Chev Tahoe - Oil Chg / Front Brake Pads and Rotors replaced - Brakes Pads and Rotors	Fifth Gear	5000334	11693	685.00	0.00	2,715.36
Total						2,715.36	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-410-53002**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Vistaprint	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	206.52	0.00	206.52
Total						206.52	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-410-53035**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	4 week Rental 7/5 to 8/1/23 - Parks Inv 172195	Texas Johns	172195	11651	89.25	0.00	89.25
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Parks event on 04/22/2023 - Community Recycling	Computer Crusher Recycling LLC	10707	11660	450.00	0.00	539.25
Total						539.25	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-410-53110**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various accts service to 6/24/23 - CoServ	CoServ	5/26 to 6/24/23	11652	25.96	0.00	25.96

acct xx2/b4 - Parks

Total	25.96	0.00
-------	-------	------

**100 - General****Account 100-410-54030**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	Service for 2 weeks beginning 07-10-2023 - Mow Park	North Texas Mow & Weed Control	3396	11658	300.00	0.00	300.00
7/25/2023	7/25/2023	Service for 2 weeks beginning 7-24-23 - Mow Park	North Texas Mow & Weed Control	3666	11688	300.00	0.00	600.00
Total						600.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-520-53080**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Half Gen'l Op'g share of Inv 10099348 Engineering fees - June 2023 chgs	Half Associates, Inc.	10099348	Genl ck 11659	866.66	0.00	866.66
Total						866.66	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-520-53085**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Inspections in May 2023 - Residential Qty 24 at \$70 / Comm	SAFEbuilt LLC	98966	11663	1,680.00	0.00	1,680.00
7/12/2023	7/12/2023	Qty 1 at \$85 - Residential Inspections in May 2023 - Residential Qty 24 at \$70 / Comm	SAFEbuilt LLC	98966	11663	85.00	0.00	1,765.00
Total						1,765.00	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-610-53060**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - Lowe's, Wal Mart, Smartsign	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	1,228.51	0.00	1,228.51
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Lowe's / Sherwin Williams	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7	11691	421.06	0.00	1,649.57
Total						1,649.57	0.00	

**100 - General****Account 100-610-53065**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/3/2023	7/3/2023	Billy Lerma new rate \$50 per hour- June 19 to June 30 - - 45 hours	Billy Joe Lerma	06-19 to 06-30	11648	2,250.00	0.00	2,250.00
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various depts Amz June charges - heavy duty trash bags	Amazon Capital Services	June 2023 Amz inv	11653	50.07	0.00	2,300.07
7/11/2023	7/11/2023	chgs to 6-21-23 - COD Landfill	Point Bank	chgs to 6-21-23	11654	100.00	0.00	2,400.07

7/19/2023	7/19/2023	7-3-23 to 7-14-23 50 hours contract payment	Billy Joe Lerma	7-3-23 to 7-14-23 11680	2,500.00	0.00	4,900.07
7/20/2023	7/20/2023	Billy Lerma reimbmt supplies - used personal funds	Billy Joe Lerma	Billy Lerma reimbmt 11685	29.10	0.00	4,929.17
7/26/2023	7/26/2023	CC stmt chg's to 7-23-2023 - Landfill	Point Bank	CC stmt chg's to 7 11691	25.00	0.00	4,954.17
Total					<u>4,954.17</u>	<u>0.00</u>	

**100 - General****Account 100-610-53110**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various accts service to 6/24/23 - CoServ	CoServ	5/26 to 6/24/23	11652	30.96	0.00	30.96
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	acct xx2767 - light						
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various accts service to 6/24/23 - CoServ	CoServ	5/26 to 6/24/23	11652	15.48	0.00	46.44
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	acct 2766 - light						
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various accts service to 6/24/23 - CoServ	CoServ	5/26 to 6/24/23	11652	15.48	0.00	61.92
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	acct xx2765 - light						
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various accts service to 6/24/23 - CoServ	CoServ	5/26 to 6/24/23	11652	11.23	0.00	73.15
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	acct xx2769 - light						
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	various accts service to 6/24/23 - CoServ	CoServ	5/26 to 6/24/23	11652	108.57	0.00	181.72
7/5/2023	7/5/2023	acct xx2768 - light						
7/18/2023	7/18/2023	acct 9000272768 Naylor Rd lights to 7-10-2023	CoServ	service to 7-10-23 11675		108.36	0.00	290.08
Total						<u>290.08</u>	<u>0.00</u>	

**100 - General****Account 100-710-59100**

Post Date	Tran Date	Line Description	Vendor	Invoice #	Check #	Debit	Credit	Balance
7/10/2023	7/10/2023	MDD to General ckg-Qtrly transfer for salary and office exp \$5562.50				0.00	5,562.50	(5,562.50)
7/18/2023	7/19/2023	Town received ck # 1020 from MDD-reimbmt for MDD CC chgs Town paid thru 6-21-2023				0.00	1,263.87	(6,826.37)
7/18/2023	7/19/2023	Town received ck # 1020 from MDD-reimbmt for MDD CC chgs Town paid thru 6-21-2023 - Reversal				1,263.87	0.00	(5,562.50)
7/27/2023	7/27/2023	Per FY 23 Budget Amendment - Reserve Money Transfer - from Genl to Veh Repl Fund				37,500.00	0.00	31,937.50
7/27/2023	7/27/2023	Trsf Out debit - 14.29% of \$\$ credited to 100-40100 07/2023 to 100-40100 Revenue moved to 370-10054 Bk acct xxx8122				38,974.48	0.00	70,911.98
Total						<u>77,738.35</u>	<u>6,826.37</u>	

## 2<sup>nd</sup> QUARTER 2023 SALES TAX REVENUE

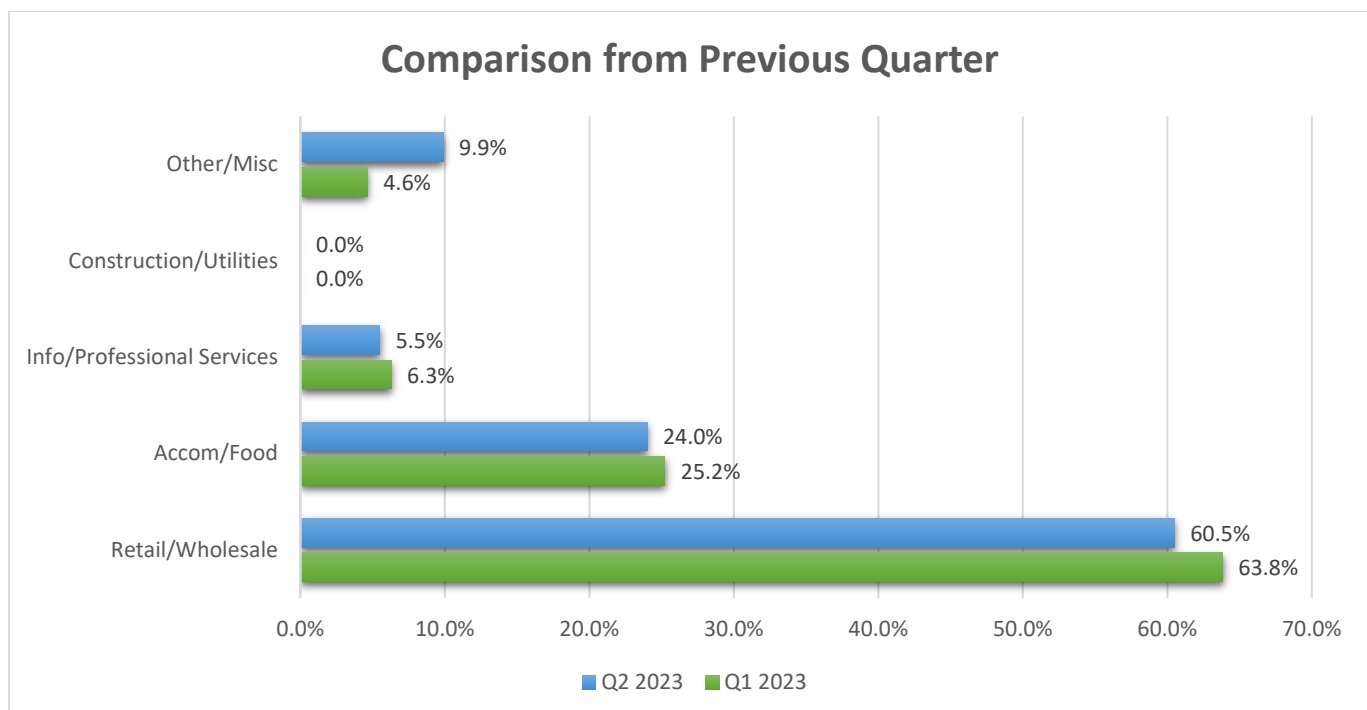
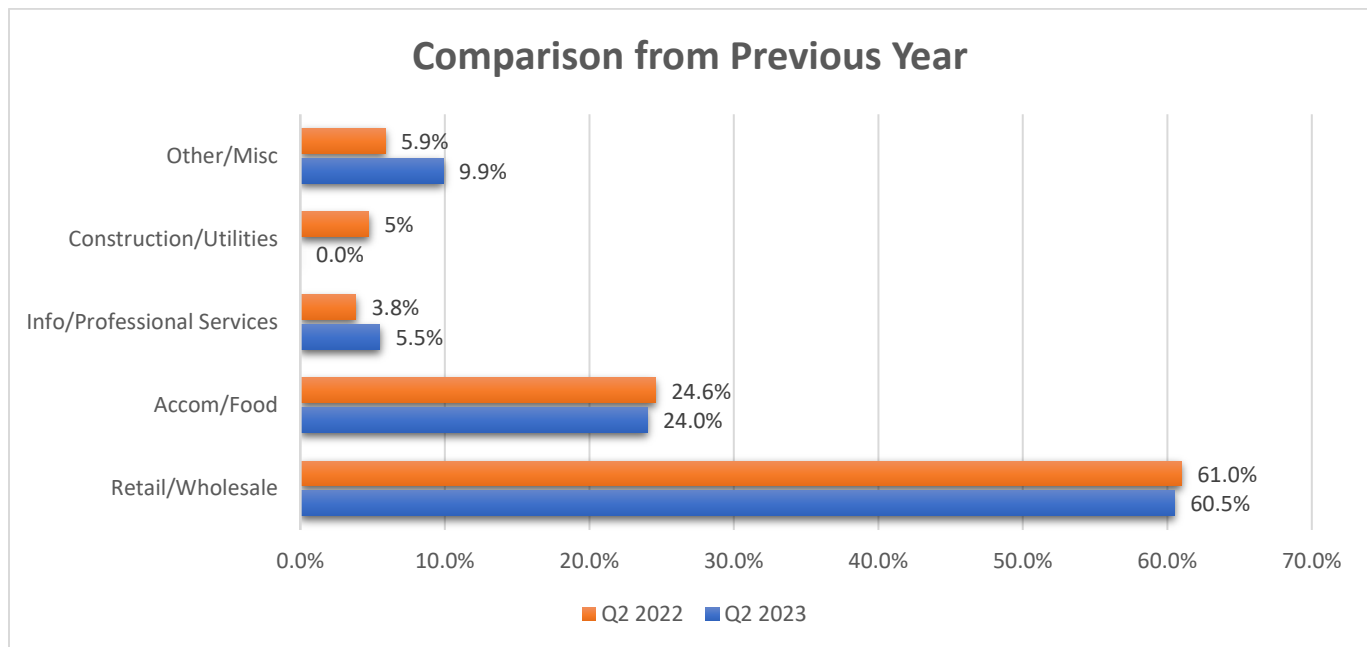
**Dates of Transaction:** February 2023 – April 2023

**Dates of Collection:** April 2023 – June 2023

**Revenue to Town 2<sup>nd</sup> Quarter 2022:** \$780,646

**Revenue to Town 2<sup>nd</sup> Quarter 2023:** \$773,688 decrease of 0.9%

The above dollars indicates actual revenue received less the 2% State Comptroller service fee and amounts retained by the Comptrollers office to insure payment. Note that, due to a change in reporting software, Construction/Utilities has been moved to Info/Professional Services effective 4<sup>th</sup> Quarter 2022.





# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 11 p. 1 of 7

## Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

## Agenda Item:

Consider approval of a resolution awarding a contract for primary bank depository services to Independent Financial and authorizing the Mayor to negotiate and execute the associated contract.

## Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

## Description:

At the March 20, 2023 Council meeting, the Town Council authorized utilizing Valley View Consulting, L.L.C. to manage the request for proposal for depository services for the Town. Attached is a memo from Valley View outlining the proposal process including the evaluation metrics utilized. Proposals were sent to 22 financial institutions, with four submitting proposals. The four included PointBank (the Town's current depository), Independent Financial, Inwood National Bank and Plains Capital Bank. Included in the memo for Valley View is a financial comparison of the proposals. Staff elected to interview and receive demonstrations from Independent Financial and Plains Capital based on information included in the proposals. After conducting the interviews and demonstrations, Staff identified Independent Financial as the preferred depository. The services provided, website features, customer service and net income to the Town were all factors in the recommendation.

Independent Financial has branches in both Denton and Little Elm, both of which are just a couple of miles further than the PointBank Aubrey branch currently utilized. The Town cannot enter into an agreement for funds over \$100,000 with Bank of America due to current statutory requirements related to Bank of America's policy on regulating the sale of firearms, however, it is recommended that an account is established at the local Bank of America branch to serve as the primary cash deposit location. Staff would make regular deposits at this branch and transfer the funds to the Independent Financial accounts.

## Recommended Action:

Staff recommends approval of a resolution of awarding a contract for primary bank depository services to Independent Financial and authorize the Mayor to negotiate and execute the associated contract.

## Attachments:

Valley View Consulting, LLC Recommendation  
Resolution



August 7, 2023

Ms. Kristi Gilbert  
Town Administrator  
Town of Cross Roads  
3201 US 380, Suite 105  
Cross Roads, Texas 76227

Dear Ms. Gilbert:

We appreciate the opportunity to assist the Town with the selection of a primary depository bank. The objective of this engagement was to create a competitive environment from which to select a primary depository bank for the Town. To increase the depository options available to Cross Roads, the Council passed a resolution, per Chapter 105 of the Local Government Code, to authorize accepting applications outside the Town Boundaries.

This contract, upon approval, will commence on October 1, 2023 and end on September 30, 2025, with three (3) additional one-year extension options for an anticipated total of five (5) years under the same terms and conditions.

### **Procedure**

The Primary Depository Bank Services RFA project began with the establishment of a Calendar of Events to ensure that the required project steps were performed in a timely and sequential manner.

The process for selecting a Primary Depository Bank is governed by the State of Texas Local Government Codes: Chapter 105 Municipal Depository Act; Chapter 176 Conflict of Interest Act; Chapter 2256 Public Funds Investment Act; and Chapter 2257 Public Funds Collateral Act.

In addition to complying with these state statutory requirements, it was necessary to understand and comply with the Town's financial and purchasing policies and Investment Policy.

The RFA project included the following steps:

1. Analyzed historical bank service usage and balance records.
2. Reviewed the minimum banking services and potential additional services.
3. In order to create a more competitive environment, the Town Council passed a resolution that permitted the Town staff to accept and consider applications from financial institutions located outside of the Town of Cross Roads municipal boundaries.
4. Developed a list of eligible financial institutions within the Town's designated expanded boundaries:

2428 Carters Mill Road, Huddleston, VA 24104-4003  
540.297.3419

The following twenty-two Financial Institutions with physical locations within Zip Codes 76201, 76205, 76227, 76258, and/or 76266 were identified:

- First Liberty Bank
- American National Bank & Trust
- Bank of America, N.A.
- Ciera Bank
- First Guaranty Bank
- First National Bank Texas
- First State Bank
- First United Bank and Trust Company
- Frost Bank
- Guaranty Bank & Trust, N.A.
- Independent Financial
- Inwood National Bank
- JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A.
- One World Bank
- PlainsCapital Bank
- PNC Bank, N.A.
- PointBank (Incumbent)
- Prosperity Bank
- Sanger Bank
- Texas Regional Bank
- Truist Bank
- UMB Bank, N.A.
- Wells Fargo Bank, N.A.

5. Contacted each financial institution to confirm distribution information, describe the process, and identify the designated recipient.
6. Drafted the Request for Application (RFA) for staff review and approval.
7. Posted the notice and advertised as required.
8. Distributed RFAs to the identified and receptive financial institutions.
9. Held a non-mandatory, virtual, pre-application conference via Zoom which was attended by the following banks:

- Frost Bank
- Guaranty Bank & Trust, N.A.
- Independent Financial
- Inwood National Bank
- PlainsCapital Bank
- PointBank (Incumbent)
- Truist Bank



10. By the closing deadline, applications were received from:

- Independent Financial
- Inwood National Bank
- PlainsCapital Bank
- PointBank (Incumbent)

### **Application Analysis**

The analysis began with an overall review of each financial institution's general financial strength and ability to provide the depository services necessary to meet the Town's current and future service needs.

The evaluation of the applications was based on, but not limited to, the following criteria, in no particular order of priority:

1. The ability of applicant to perform and provide the required and requested services,
2. References provided and quality of services,
3. Cost of services,
4. Transition cost, retention, and transition offers and incentives,
5. Interest rates on interest-bearing accounts and deposits,
6. Earnings credit rate on compensating balances,
7. Previous service relationship with the Town,
8. Completeness of application and agreement to points outlined in the RFA,
9. Qualifying location of the applicant and convenience of location(s),
10. Financial strength and stability of the institution.

### **Financial Analysis**

The following table summarizes the projected net income of each applicant over the initial two-year and the anticipated and allowed five-year term of the contract.

Summary Financial Comparison				
	Independent Financial	Inwood Bank	Plains Capital	Point Bank
<b>Average Bank Balance</b>	3,600,000	3,600,000	3,600,000	3,600,000
Fees for Two Year Term	(\$12,691)	\$0	(\$8,688)	(\$480)
Earnings Credit Rate	4.73%	N/A	5.00%	N/A
Earnings Credit for 2 Years	12,691	0	8,688	0
Two Year Investment Income	363,899	353,600	344,285	360,000
<b>Net Two Year Income</b>	<b>\$363,899</b>	<b>\$353,600</b>	<b>\$344,285</b>	<b>\$359,520</b>
Fees for Five Year Term	(\$31,728)	\$0	(\$21,721)	(\$1,200)
Earnings Credit for Five Year Term	31,728	0	21,721	0
Five Year Investment Income	909,747	884,000	860,714	900,000
<b>Net Five Year Income</b>	<b>\$909,747</b>	<b>\$884,000</b>	<b>\$860,714</b>	<b>\$898,800</b>

### Next Steps

After the applications were analyzed, the Town identified Independent Financial and PlainsCapital Bank as the two finalists based on the financial comparison in the tables on the preceding page. Both banks were invited to meet with the Town's staff to provide a demonstration of their online services and to discuss the implementation and onboarding process for moving the Town's depository services to their respective bank.

### Conclusion

Based on the financial analysis, and the meetings with both banks, the staff believes that Independent Financial offers the most advantageous terms for the Town. As the Town's consultant we concur with the staff's recommendation that the Town Council award the Primary Depository Services contract to Independent Financial.

Please contact E.K. Hufstедler, Tom Ross, Orlando Saenz, or me to discuss any questions or for additional information. We thank you for this opportunity to serve the Town of Cross Roads.

Respectfully,



Tim Pinon  
Valley View Consulting, LLC

**TOWN OF CROSS ROADS  
RESOLUTION NO. 2023-\_\_**

**A RESOLUTION OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS, AWARDING A PRIMARY DEPOSITORY SERVICES CONTRACT TO INDEPENDENT FINANCIAL AND AUTHORIZING THE MAYOR, OR DESIGNEE, TO EXECUTE ALL AGREEMENTS NECESSARY TO IMPLEMENT THE CONTRACT.**

**WHEREAS**, the Town of Cross Roads, Texas (“Town”) is required by Chapter 105 of the Texas Local Government Code to select a primary depository for the Town’s funds and,

**WHEREAS**, the Town has solicited for applications from eligible financial institutions to serve as the Town’s primary Depository, and

**WHEREAS**, the Town of Cross Roads has determined that Independent Financial has provided the most advantageous terms to the Town,

**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS:**

**Section 1.** The above and foregoing premises are true and correct legislative findings, and they are incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

**Section 2.** The Town Council hereby awards the Town’s primary depository contract to Independent Financial for an initial two-year term effective October 1, 2023 with the option to extent for up to three (3) additional one-year periods.

**Section 3.** The Mayor, or designee, is hereby authorized to execute all necessary agreements to establish the depository relationship.

**Section 4.** If any section, paragraph, sentence, clause, phrase or word of this Resolution or the application thereof to any person or circumstance is held invalid or unconstitutional, such holding shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this Resolution, and the Town Council hereby declares that it would have passed such portions remaining despite invalidity or unconstitutionality.

**Section 5.** That this resolution, and the removal and appointment herein, shall take effective immediately from and after the date of its passage.

**DULY PASSED** by the Town Council of the Town of Cross Roads, Texas, on **the 21st day of August 2023.**

**TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS**

---

T. Lynn Tompkins, Jr., Mayor

**ATTEST**

---

Donna Butler, Town Secretary

**APPROVED AS TO FORM**

---

Matthew C.G. Boyle, Town Attorney



# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 12 p. 1 of 3

Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Consider approval of a resolution authorizing the Mayor or Town Administrator to establish an account with Bank of America and designating signatories for the account.

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

This item is a companion item to the award of the Depository Contract to Independent Bank. Bank of America was prohibited from bidding as the Town's depository due to statutory restrictions that prohibit the Town from doing business in excess of \$100,000 with businesses that regulate the sale or purchase of firearms, which Bank of America does. In order to have the convenience of making deposits within a reasonable drive of Town Hall, Staff has recommended that an account be set up with Bank of America that will be utilized to make deposits only. The deposit amount will then be transferred to Independent Bank where we will generate more interest and we can maintain a higher balance.

The proposed resolution is required by to establish an account with Bank of America and add signatories.

Recommended Action:

Staff recommends approval of the resolution.

Attachments:

Proposed Resolution

**TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS  
RESOLUTION NO. \_\_\_\_\_**

**A RESOLUTION OF THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS APPROVING AND AUTHORIZING THE MAYOR AND/OR THE TOWN ADMINISTRATOR TO NEGOTIATE AND EXECUTE ANY AND ALL CONTRACTS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS INCIDENT TO ESTABLISHING BANK AND INVESTMENT ACCOUNT(S) FOR THE PURPOSE OF INVESTING IN AUTHORIZED INVESTMENTS AND FINANCIAL INSTITUTION DEPOSITS AND IDENTIFYING AUTHORIZED SIGNATORIES FOR SAID ACCOUNTS.**

**WHEREAS**, the Town of Cross Roads, Texas desires to invest in authorized investments and financial institution deposits for investment and deposit purposes; and,

**WHEREAS**, the Town of Cross Roads, Texas is authorized under applicable law and Town of Cross Roads Investment Policy to contract with investment firms and financial institutions for investment and deposit purposes.

**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS:**

**Section 1.** That the findings and provisions set out in the preamble to this resolution are hereby in all things approved and adopted.

**Section 2.** That the following Town of Cross Roads elected officials and employees whose titles are set forth below are hereby authorized to negotiate and execute any and all contracts and other documents as necessary to establish the Town of Cross Roads investment and financial institution accounts, with the express powers granted to enter into treasury management services agreements as necessary for account transactions, including but not limited to deposit, withdrawal, and transfer via wire and ACH:

1. Title: Mayor
2. Title: Town Administrator

**Section 3.** That the following Town of Cross Roads elected officials and employees whose titles are set forth below are hereby authorized as signatories for account transactions, including but not limited to deposit, withdrawal, and transfer via wire and ACH:

1. Title: Mayor
2. Title: Mayor Pro-Tem
3. Title: Town Administrator
4. Title: Town Secretary

**Section 4.** That the Town Secretary is hereby authorized to provide such certifications as may be necessary or convenient to confirm the title, identity, and

signature of each person holding one of the aforesaid titles and the authority of said persons with respect to the transactions authorized herein.

**Section 5.** That the authorization provided herein is contingent upon the approval of the Town of Cross Roads Town Attorney or designee of all contracts and other documents to be executed pursuant to the authority granted herein.

**Section 6.** That all investments made under the authority provided herein are to be conducted in strict accordance with Town of Cross Roads Investment Policy and applicable law.

**Section 7.** That this resolution shall be effective immediately from and after its date of passage.

**PASSED AND APPROVED** by the Town Council of the Town of Cross Roads, Texas, on this 21<sup>st</sup> day of August, 2023.

---

T. Lynn Tompkins, Jr., Mayor  
Town of Cross Roads, Texas

**ATTEST:**

**APPROVED AS TO FORM:**

---

Donna Butler, Town Secretary  
Town of Cross Roads, Texas

---

Matthew C.G. Boyle, Town Attorney  
Town of Cross Roads, Texas



Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Consider approval of a resolution suspending the September 1, 2023 effective date of CoServ Gas, Ltd.'s requested rate change to permit the Town time to study the request and establish reasonable rates, including utilizing legal and consulting services of Lloyd Gosselink Rochelle and Townsend, P.C. and requiring reimbursement of the Steering Committee of Cities Served by CoServ.

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

On July 28, 2023, CoServ Gas Ltd. Files a gas rate case at the Railroad Commission for 32 municipalities within the Dallas/Fort Worth Area, of which, Cross Roads is one. The application requests a \$10.3 million increase in annual revenues which, if adopted, would increase base rates by 27.3%. Adopting the attached resolution will authorize the Town to participate in the Steering Committee of Cities Served by CoServ and suspend the recommended rate increase by 90 days to allow for review and negotiation of the rates.

Attached is detailed information on the process provided by representatives of the Steering Committee of Cities Served by CoServ.

Recommended Action:

Staff recommends approval.

Attachments:

Model Staff Report

Proposed Resolution



## **MODEL STAFF REPORT REGARDING COSERV'S REQUESTED RATE CHANGE**

### **ACTION MUST BE TAKEN TO SUSPEND THE EFFECTIVE DATE ON OR BEFORE SEPTEMBER 1, 2023**

On July 28, 2023, CoServ Gas, Ltd. ("CoServ" or "Company"), pursuant to Subchapter C of Chapter 104 of the Gas Utility Regulatory Act, filed its Statement of Intent to change gas rates at the Railroad Commission of Texas ("RRC") and in all municipalities exercising original jurisdiction within its service area, effective September 1, 2023.

CoServ is seeking to increase its annual revenues in incorporated areas by \$10,314,726, which is an increase of 7.5% including gas costs, or 27.3% excluding gas costs. CoServ is also requesting: (1) new depreciation rates for distribution and general plant; (2) a prudence determination for capital investment; (3) specification of the factors to be used in any Interim Rate Adjustment Filing the Company makes pursuant to Texas Utilities Code § 104.302; and (4) a surcharge on customer bills to recover the reasonable rate case expenses associated with the filing of this statement of intent.

#### **Purpose of the Resolution:**

The resolution suspends the September 1, 2023 effective date of the Company's rate increase for the maximum period permitted by law to allow the City, working in conjunction with other similarly situated cities with original jurisdiction served by CoServ, to evaluate the filing, to determine whether the filing complies with the law, and if lawful, to determine what further strategy, including settlement, to pursue.

The law provides that a rate request cannot become effective until at least 35 days following the filing of the application to change rates. The law permits the City to suspend the rate change for 90 days after the date the rate change would otherwise be effective. **If the City fails to take some action regarding the filing before the effective date, CoServ's rate request is deemed approved.**

#### **Explanation of "Be It Resolved" Sections:**

Section 1. This section incorporates the "whereas" provisions in the preamble into the Resolution.

Section 2. The City is authorized to suspend the rate change for 90 days after the date that the rate change would otherwise be effective for any legitimate purpose. Time to study and investigate the application is always a legitimate purpose. Please note that the resolution refers to the suspension period as "the maximum period allowed by law" rather than ending by a specific date. This is because the Company controls the effective date and can extend the deadline for final city action to increase the time that the City retains jurisdiction if necessary to reach settlement on the case. If the suspension period is not otherwise extended by the Company, the City must take final action on CoServ's request to increase rates by September 1, 2023.

Section 3. This provision authorizes the City to participate in a coalition of cities served by CoServ in order to more efficiently represent the interests of the City and their citizens. It also authorizes the hiring of Thomas L. Brocato with the law firm of Lloyd Gosselink Rochelle and Townsend to represent the City in this matter.

Section 4. By law, the Company must reimburse the cities for their reasonable rate case expenses. Legal counsel and consultants approved by Cities will present their invoices to Cities which will then seek reimbursement from CoServ. The City will not incur liability for payment of rate case expenses by adopting a suspension resolution.

Section 5. This section merely recites that the resolution was passed at a meeting that was open to the public and that the consideration of the Resolution was properly noticed.

Section 6. This section provides that both CoServ's counsel and counsel for the cities will be notified of the City's action by sending a copy of the approved and signed resolution to certain designated individuals.

Section 7. This section identifies the effective date of the Resolution as the time it is adopted.

**TOWN OF CROSS ROADS  
RESOLUTION NO. 2023-\_\_\_\_\_**

**RESOLUTION OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS  
SUSPENDING THE SEPTEMBER 1, 2023 EFFECTIVE  
DATE OF COSERV GAS, LTD.'S REQUESTED RATE  
CHANGE TO PERMIT THE TOWN TIME TO STUDY THE  
REQUEST AND TO ESTABLISH REASONABLE RATES;  
APPROVING COOPERATION WITH OTHER CITIES IN  
THE COSERV SERVICE AREA, TO HIRE LEGAL AND  
CONSULTING SERVICES AND TO NEGOTIATE WITH  
THE COMPANY AND DIRECT ANY NECESSARY  
LITIGATION AND APPEALS; REQUIRING  
REIMBURSEMENT OF THE STEERING COMMITTEE OF  
CITIES SERVED BY COSERV GAS' RATE CASE  
EXPENSES; FINDING THAT THE MEETING AT WHICH  
THIS RESOLUTION IS PASSED IS OPEN TO THE PUBLIC  
AS REQUIRED BY LAW; REQUIRING NOTICE OF THIS  
RESOLUTION TO THE COMPANY AND LEGAL  
COUNSEL**

WHEREAS, on or about July 28, 2023, CoServ Gas Ltd (“CoServ” or “Company”), pursuant to Gas Utility Regulatory Act § 104.102 filed with the TOWN of CROSS ROADS (“TOWN”) a Statement of Intent to change gas rates in all municipalities exercising original jurisdiction within its service area, effective September 1, 2023; and

WHEREAS, the TOWN is a gas utility customer and a regulatory authority under the Gas Utility Regulatory Act (“GURA”) and under Chapter 104, § 104.001 et seq. of GURA has exclusive original jurisdiction over CoServ’s rates, operations, and services within the TOWN; and

WHEREAS, in order to maximize the efficient use of resources and expertise, it is reasonable for the TOWN to cooperate with other cities in conducting a review of the Company’s application and to hire and direct legal counsel and consultants and to prepare a common response and to negotiate with the Company and direct any necessary litigation; and

WHEREAS, it is not possible for the TOWN to complete its review of CoServ’s filing by the September 1, 2023 effective date proposed in CoServ’s Statement of Intent; and

WHEREAS, the TOWN will need an adequate amount of time to review and evaluate CoServ’s rate application to enable the TOWN to adopt a final decision as a local regulatory authority with regard to CoServ’s requested rate increase; and

WHEREAS, GURA § 104.107 grants local regulatory authorities the right to suspend the effective date of proposed rate changes for ninety (90) days; and

WHEREAS, GURA § 103.022 provides that costs incurred by cities in ratemaking activities are to be reimbursed by the regulated utility.

THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS:

1. That the findings and recitations set out in the preamble of this Resolution are found to be true and correct and are hereby adopted by the TOWN Council and made a part hereof for all purposes.

2, That the September 1, 2023 effective date of the rate request submitted by CoServ on July 28, 2023, be suspended for the maximum period allowed by law to permit adequate time to review the proposed changes and to establish reasonable rates.

3. That the TOWN is authorized to cooperate with other cities in the CoServ service area, CoServ Gas Cities, and subject to the right to terminate employment at any time, hereby authorizes the hiring of Thomas L. Brocato of the law firm of Lloyd Gosselink Rochelle and Townsend, P.C. and consultants, to review CoServ's filing, negotiate with the Company, make recommendations to the TOWN regarding reasonable rates, and to direct any necessary administrative proceedings or court litigation associated with an appeal of a rate ordinance and the rate case filed with the TOWN or Railroad Commission.

4. That the TOWN's reasonable rate case expenses shall be reimbursed by CoServ.

5. That it is hereby officially found and determined that the meeting at which this Resolution is passed is open to the public as required by law and the public notice of the time, place, and purpose of said meeting was given as required.

6. That a copy of this Resolution shall be sent to CoServ, care of Charles D. Harrell, CoServ Gas Ltd., 7701 South Stemmons, Corinth, Texas 76210-1842, and to Thomas Brocato, counsel for CoServ Gas Cities, at Lloyd Gosselink Rochelle & Townsend, P.C., P.O. Box 1725, Austin, Texas 78767-1725 ([tbrocato@lglawfirm.com](mailto:tbrocato@lglawfirm.com)).

7. That this Resolution shall be and become effective from and after its adoption.

PASSED AND APPROVED this **21st** day of **August**, 2023.

---

Mayor

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

---

TOWN ATTORNEY

I, Donna Butler, Secretary of the TOWN Council of the TOWN of CROSS ROADS, Texas, do hereby certify that the foregoing is a true and correct copy of a Resolution adopted by the TOWN Council of the TOWN of CROSS ROADS, Texas, at its regular meeting held of the 21 day of August, 2023, as the same appears in the records of this office.

**IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF**, I subscribe my name hereto officially under the corporate seal of the TOWN of CROSS ROADS this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2023.

---

Secretary for the TOWN Council  
of the TOWN of CROSS ROADS, Texas



# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 14 p. 1 of 23

Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Consider approval of a resolution declaring Atmos Energy Corp., Mid-Tex Division rates to be unreasonable, adopting tariffs that reflect rate adjustments consistent with the negotiated settlement and finding the rates from the negotiated settlement to be just and reasonable and in the public interest.

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

Atmos Energy Corporation, Mid-Tex Division ("Atmos") filed a rate request on or about March 1, 2023 claiming that its cost-of-service entitled them to additional system-wide revenues of \$165.9 million. The Atmos Cities Steering Committee (ACSC), of which the Town is a member, negotiated the rates and has recommend a settlement of \$142 million with an effective date of October 1, 2023. The impact of the settlement on average residential rates is an increase of \$6.47 on a monthly basis, or 7.31 percent.

Attached is detailed information on the process provided by representatives of the ACSC.

Recommended Action:

Approval of the resolution will serve settlement of the rate increase.

Attachments:

Model Staff Report

Proposed Resolution with Attachments

Average Bill Comparison

August 2, 2023

## **MODEL STAFF REPORT FOR RESOLUTION OR ORDINANCE**

### **BACKGROUND AND SUMMARY**

The City, along with 181 other Mid-Texas cities served by Atmos Energy Corporation, Mid-Tex Division (“Atmos Mid-Tex” or “Company”), is a member of the Atmos Cities Steering Committee (“ACSC”). In 2007, ACSC and Atmos Mid-Tex settled a rate application filed by the Company pursuant to Section 104.301 of the Texas Utilities Code for an interim rate adjustment commonly referred to as a GRIP filing (arising out of the Gas Reliability Infrastructure Program legislation). That settlement created a substitute rate review process, referred to as Rate Review Mechanism (“RRM”), as a substitute for future filings under the GRIP statute.

Since 2007, there have been several modifications to the original RRM Tariff. The most recent iteration of an RRM Tariff was reflected in an ordinance adopted by ACSC members in 2018. On or about March 31, 2023, the Company filed a rate request pursuant to the RRM Tariff adopted by ACSC members. The Company claimed that its cost-of-service in a test year ending December 31, 2022, entitled it to additional system-wide revenues of \$165.9 million.

Application of the standards set forth in ACSC’s RRM Tariff reduces the Company’s request to \$156.1 million, \$113.8 million of which would be applicable to ACSC members. After reviewing the filing and conducting discovery, ACSC’s consultants concluded that the system-wide deficiency under the RRM regime should be \$130.9 million instead of the claimed \$156.1 million.

After several settlement meetings, the parties have agreed to settle the case for \$142 million. This is a reduction of \$23.9 million to the Company’s initial request. This includes payment of ACSC’s expenses. The settlement also includes an additional \$19.5 million for the securitization regulatory asset expenses related to Winter Storm Uri. This was previously approved by the Texas

Legislature and Railroad Commission. The Effective Date for new rates is October 1, 2023. ACSC members should take action approving the Resolution/Ordinance before September 30, 2023.

## **RATE TARIFFS**

Atmos generated rate tariffs attached to the Resolution/Ordinance will generate \$142 million in additional revenues. Atmos also prepared a Proof of Revenues supporting the settlement figures. ACSC consultants have agreed that Atmos' Proof of Revenues is accurate.

## **BILL IMPACT**

The impact of the settlement on average residential rates is an increase of \$6.47 on a monthly basis, or 7.31%. The increase for average commercial usage will be \$24.72 or 5.19%. Atmos provided bill impact comparisons containing these figures.

## **SUMMARY OF ACSC'S OBJECTION TO THE UTILITIES CODE SECTION 104.301 GRIP PROCESS**

ACSC strongly opposed the GRIP process because it constitutes piecemeal ratemaking by ignoring declining expenses and increasing revenues while rewarding the Company for increasing capital investment on an annual basis. The GRIP process does not allow any review of the reasonableness of capital investment and does not allow cities to participate in the Railroad Commission's review of annual GRIP filings or allow recovery of Cities' rate case expenses. The Railroad Commission undertakes a mere administrative review of GRIP filings (instead of a full hearing) and rate increases go into effect without any material adjustments. In ACSC's view, the GRIP process unfairly raises customers' rates without any regulatory oversight. In contrast, the RRM process has allowed for a more comprehensive rate review and annual evaluation of expenses and revenues, as well as capital investment.

## **RRM SAVINGS OVER GRIP**

While residents outside municipal limits must pay rates governed by GRIP, there are some cities served by Atmos Mid-Tex that chose to remain under GRIP rather than adopt RRM.



Additionally, the City of Dallas adopted a variation of RRM which is referred to as DARR. When new rates become effective on October 1, 2023, ACSC residents will maintain an economic monthly advantage over GRIP and DARR rates.

**Comparison to Other Mid-Tex Rates (Residential)**

	<u>Average Bill</u>	<u>Compared to RRM Cities</u>
RRM Cities:	\$42.62	-
DARR:	\$42.55	(\$0.07)
ATM Cities:	\$44.39	\$1.77
Environs:	\$44.27	\$1.65

Note: ATM Cities and Environs rates are as-filed. Also note that DARR uses a test year ending in September rather than December.

**EXPLANATION OF “BE IT RESOLVED” PARAGRAPHS:**

1. This section approves all findings in the Resolution/Ordinance.
2. This section adopts the RRM rate tariffs and finds the adoption of the new rates to be just, reasonable, and in the public interest.
3. This section makes it clear that Cities may challenge future costs associated with gas leaks.
4. This section finds that existing rates are unreasonable. Such finding is a necessary predicate to establishment of new rates. The new tariffs will permit Atmos Mid-Tex to recover an additional \$142 million on a system-wide basis.
5. This section approves an exhibit that establishes a benchmark for pensions and retiree medical benefits to be used in future rate cases or RRM filings.
6. This section requires the Company to reimburse the City for expenses associated with review of the RRM filing, settlement discussions, and adoption of the Resolution/Ordinance approving new rate tariffs.
7. This section repeals any resolution or ordinance that is inconsistent with the Resolution/Ordinance.

8. This section finds that the meeting was conducted in compliance with the Texas Open Meetings Act, Texas Government Code, Chapter 551.
9. This section is a savings clause, which provides that if any section is later found to be unconstitutional or invalid, that finding shall not affect, impair, or invalidate the remaining provisions of this Resolution/Ordinance. This section further directs that the remaining provisions of the Resolution/Ordinance are to be interpreted as if the offending section or clause never existed.
10. This section provides for an effective date upon passage.
11. This section directs that a copy of the signed Resolution/Ordinance be sent to a representative of the Company and legal counsel for ACSC.

## **CONCLUSION**

The Legislature's GRIP process allowed gas utilities to receive annual rate increases associated with capital investments. The RRM process has proven to result in a more efficient and less costly (both from a consumer rate impact perspective and from a ratemaking perspective) than the GRIP process. Given Atmos Mid-Tex's claim that its historic cost of service should entitle it to recover \$165.9 million in additional system-wide revenues, the RRM settlement at \$142 million for ACSC members reflects substantial savings to ACSC cities. Settlement at \$142 million is fair and reasonable. The ACSC Executive Committee consisting of city employees of 18 ACSC members urges all ACSC members to pass the Resolution/Ordinance before September 30, 2023. New rates become effective October 1, 2023.

RESOLUTION NO. \_\_\_\_\_

**RESOLUTION NO. 2023-\_\_\_\_\_**

**A RESOLUTION OF THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS, APPROVING A NEGOTIATED SETTLEMENT BETWEEN THE ATMOS CITIES STEERING COMMITTEE (“ACSC”) AND ATMOS ENERGY CORP., MID-TEX DIVISION REGARDING THE COMPANY’S 2023 RATE REVIEW MECHANISM FILING; DECLARING EXISTING RATES TO BE UNREASONABLE; ADOPTING TARIFFS THAT REFLECT RATE ADJUSTMENTS CONSISTENT WITH THE NEGOTIATED SETTLEMENT; FINDING THE RATES TO BE SET BY THE ATTACHED SETTLEMENT TARIFFS TO BE JUST AND REASONABLE AND IN THE PUBLIC INTEREST; APPROVING AN ATTACHMENT ESTABLISHING A BENCHMARK FOR PENSIONS AND RETIREE MEDICAL BENEFITS; REQUIRING THE COMPANY TO REIMBURSE ACSC’S REASONABLE RATEMAKING EXPENSES; DETERMINING THAT THIS RESOLUTION WAS PASSED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE TEXAS OPEN MEETINGS ACT; ADOPTING A SAVINGS CLAUSE; DECLARING AN EFFECTIVE DATE; AND REQUIRING DELIVERY OF THIS RESOLUTION TO THE COMPANY AND THE ACSC’S LEGAL COUNSEL.**

WHEREAS, the Town of Cross Roads, Texas (“Town”) is a gas utility customer of Atmos Energy Corp., Mid-Tex Division (“Atmos Mid-Tex” or “Company”), and a regulatory authority with an interest in the rates, charges, and services of Atmos Mid-Tex; and

WHEREAS, the Town is a member of the Atmos Cities Steering Committee (“ACSC”), a coalition of similarly-situated cities served by Atmos Mid-Tex (“ACSC Cities”) that have joined together to facilitate the review of, and response to, natural gas issues affecting rates charged in the Atmos Mid-Tex service area; and

WHEREAS, ACSC and the Company worked collaboratively to develop a Rate Review Mechanism (“RRM”) tariff that allows for an expedited rate review process by ACSC Cities as a substitute to the Gas Reliability Infrastructure Program (“GRIP”) process instituted by the

RESOLUTION NO. \_\_\_\_\_

Legislature, and that will establish rates for the ACSC Cities based on the system-wide cost of serving the Atmos Mid-Tex Division; and

WHEREAS, the current RRM tariff was adopted by the Town in a rate ordinance in 2018; and

WHEREAS, on about March 1, 2023, Atmos Mid-Tex filed its 2023 RRM rate request with ACSC Cities based on a test year ending December 31, 2022; and

WHEREAS, ACSC coordinated its review of the Atmos Mid-Tex 2023 RRM filing through its Executive Committee, assisted by ACSC's attorneys and consultants, to resolve issues identified in the Company's RRM filing; and

WHEREAS, the Executive Committee, as well as ACSC's counsel and consultants, recommend that ACSC Cities approve an increase in base rates for Atmos Mid-Tex of \$142 million on a system-wide basis with an Effective Date of October 1, 2023; and

WHEREAS, ACSC agrees that Atmos' plant-in-service is reasonable; and

WHEREAS, with the exception of approved plant-in-service, ACSC is not foreclosed from future reasonableness evaluation of costs associated with incidents related to gas leaks; and

WHEREAS, the attached tariffs (Attachment 1) implementing new rates are consistent with the recommendation of the ACSC Executive Committee, are agreed to by the Company, and are just, reasonable, and in the public interest; and

WHEREAS, the settlement agreement sets a new benchmark for pensions and retiree medical benefits (Attachment 2); and

WHEREAS, the RRM Tariff contemplates reimbursement of ACSC's reasonable expenses associated with RRM applications; and

RESOLUTION NO. \_\_\_\_\_

WHEREAS, the RRM Tariff includes Securitization Interest Regulatory Asset amount of \$19.5 million;

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS:

**Section 1.** That the findings set forth in this Resolution are hereby in all things approved.

**Section 2.** That, without prejudice to future litigation of any issue identified by ACSC, the Town Council finds that the settled amount of an increase in revenues of \$142 million on a system-wide basis represents a comprehensive settlement of gas utility rate issues affecting the rates, operations, and services offered by Atmos Mid-Tex within the municipal limits arising from Atmos Mid-Tex's 2023 RRM filing, is in the public interest, and is consistent with the Town's authority under Section 103.001 of the Texas Utilities Code.

**Section 3.** That despite finding Atmos Mid-Tex's plant-in-service to be reasonable, ACSC is not foreclosed in future cases from evaluating the reasonableness of costs associated with incidents involving leaks of natural gas.

**Section 4.** That the existing rates for natural gas service provided by Atmos Mid-Tex are unreasonable. The new tariffs attached hereto and incorporated herein as Attachment 1, are just and reasonable, and are designed to allow Atmos Mid-Tex to recover annually an additional \$142 on a system-wide basis, over the amount allowed under currently approved rates. Such tariffs are hereby adopted.

**Section 5.** That the ratemaking treatment for pensions and retiree medical benefits in Atmos Mid-Tex's next RRM filing shall be as set forth on Attachment 2, attached hereto and incorporated herein.

RESOLUTION NO. \_\_\_\_\_

**Section 6.** That Atmos Mid-Tex shall reimburse the reasonable ratemaking expenses of the ACSC in processing the Company's 2023 RRM filing.

**Section 7.** That to the extent any resolution or ordinance previously adopted by the Council is inconsistent with this Resolution, it is hereby repealed.

**Section 8.** That the meeting at which this Resolution was approved was in all things conducted in strict compliance with the Texas Open Meetings Act, Texas Government Code, Chapter 551.

**Section 9.** That if any one or more sections or clauses of this Resolution is adjudged to be unconstitutional or invalid, such judgment shall not affect, impair, or invalidate the remaining provisions of this Resolution, and the remaining provisions of the Resolution shall be interpreted as if the offending section or clause never existed.

**Section 10.** That consistent with the Town Ordinance that established the RRM process, this Resolution shall become effective from and after its passage with rates authorized by attached tariffs to be effective for bills rendered on or after September 30, 2023.

**Section 11.** That a copy of this Resolution shall be sent to Atmos Mid-Tex, care of Chris Felan, Vice President of Rates and Regulatory Affairs Mid-Tex Division, Atmos Energy Corporation, 5420 LBJ Freeway, Suite 1862, Dallas, Texas 75240, and to Thomas Brocato, General Counsel to ACSC, at Lloyd Gosselink Rochelle & Townsend, P.C., 816 Congress Avenue, Suite 1900, Austin, Texas 78701.

RESOLUTION NO. \_\_\_\_\_

DULY PASSED AND APPROVED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS, BY A VOTE OF \_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_, ON THIS THE 21<sup>st</sup> DAY OF AUGUST, 2023.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Mayor

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Town Secretary

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Town Attorney

**MID-TEX DIVISION  
ATMOS ENERGY CORPORATION**

<b>RATE SCHEDULE:</b>	<b>R – RESIDENTIAL SALES</b>	
<b>APPLICABLE TO:</b>	<b>ALL CUSTOMERS IN THE MID-TEX DIVISION UNDER THE RRM TARIFF</b>	
<b>EFFECTIVE DATE:</b>	<b>Bills Rendered on or after 10/01/2023</b>	

**Application**

Applicable to Residential Customers for all natural gas provided at one Point of Delivery and measured through one meter.

**Type of Service**

Where service of the type desired by Customer is not already available at the Point of Delivery, additional charges and special contract arrangements between Company and Customer may be required prior to service being furnished.

**Monthly Rate**

Customer's monthly bill will be calculated by adding the following Customer and Ccf charges to the amounts due under the riders listed below:

<b>Charge</b>	<b>Amount</b>
Customer Charge per Bill	\$ 22.25 per month
Rider CEE Surcharge	\$ 0.05 per month <sup>1</sup>
<b>Total Customer Charge</b>	<b>\$ 22.30 per month</b>
Commodity Charge – All <u>Ccf</u>	\$0.48567 per Ccf <sup>2</sup>

Gas Cost Recovery: Plus an amount for gas costs and upstream transportation costs calculated in accordance with Part (a) and Part (b), respectively, of Rider GCR.

Weather Normalization Adjustment: Plus or Minus an amount for weather normalization calculated in accordance with Rider WNA.

Franchise Fee Adjustment: Plus an amount for franchise fees calculated in accordance with Rider FF. Rider FF is only applicable to customers inside the corporate limits of any incorporated municipality.

Tax Adjustment: Plus an amount for tax calculated in accordance with Rider TAX.

Surcharges: Plus an amount for surcharges calculated in accordance with the applicable rider(s).

**Agreement**

An Agreement for Gas Service may be required.

**Notice**

Service hereunder and the rates for services provided are subject to the orders of regulatory bodies having jurisdiction and to the Company's Tariff for Gas Service.

<sup>1</sup>Reference Rider CEE - Conservation and Energy Efficiency as approved in GUD 10170. Surcharge billing effective July 1, 2023.

<sup>2</sup>The commodity charge includes the base rate amount of \$0.46724 per Ccf and Securitization Regulatory Asset amounts related to financing costs in the amount of \$0.01843 per Ccf until recovered.



**MID-TEX DIVISION  
ATMOS ENERGY CORPORATION**

<b>RATE SCHEDULE:</b>	<b>C – COMMERCIAL SALES</b>	
<b>APPLICABLE TO:</b>	<b>ALL CUSTOMERS IN THE MID-TEX DIVISION UNDER THE RRM TARIFF</b>	
<b>EFFECTIVE DATE:</b>	<b>Bills Rendered on or after 10/01/2023</b>	

**Application**

Applicable to Commercial Customers for all natural gas provided at one Point of Delivery and measured through one meter and to Industrial Customers with an average annual usage of less than 30,000 Ccf.

**Type of Service**

Where service of the type desired by Customer is not already available at the Point of Delivery, additional charges and special contract arrangements between Company and Customer may be required prior to service being furnished.

**Monthly Rate**

Customer's monthly bill will be calculated by adding the following Customer and Ccf charges to the amounts due under the riders listed below:

<b>Charge</b>	<b>Amount</b>
Customer Charge per Bill	\$ 72.00 per month
Rider CEE Surcharge	(\$ 0.02) per month <sup>1</sup>
<b>Total Customer Charge</b>	<b>\$ 71.98 per month</b>
Commodity Charge – All Ccf	\$ 0.18280 per Ccf <sup>2</sup>

Gas Cost Recovery: Plus an amount for gas costs and upstream transportation costs calculated in accordance with Part (a) and Part (b), respectively, of Rider GCR.

Weather Normalization Adjustment: Plus or Minus an amount for weather normalization calculated in accordance with Rider WNA.

Franchise Fee Adjustment: Plus an amount for franchise fees calculated in accordance with Rider FF. Rider FF is only applicable to customers inside the corporate limits of any incorporated municipality.

Tax Adjustment: Plus an amount for tax calculated in accordance with Rider TAX.

Surcharges: Plus an amount for surcharges calculated in accordance with the applicable rider(s).

**Agreement**

An Agreement for Gas Service may be required.

**Notice**

Service hereunder and the rates for services provided are subject to the orders of regulatory bodies having jurisdiction and to the Company's Tariff for Gas Service.

**Presumption of Plant Protection Level**

For service under this Rate Schedule, plant protection volumes are presumed to be 10% of normal, regular, historical usage as reasonably calculated by the Company in its sole discretion. If a customer believes it needs to be modeled at an alternative plant protection volume, it should contact the company at [mdtx.plantprotection@atmosenergy.com](mailto:mdtx.plantprotection@atmosenergy.com).

<sup>1</sup> Reference Rider CEE - Conservation and Energy Efficiency as approved in GUD 10170. Surcharge billing effective July 1, 2023.

<sup>2</sup>The commodity charge includes the base rate amount of \$0.16437 per Ccf and Securitization Regulatory Asset amounts related to financing costs in the amount of \$0.01843 per Ccf until recovered.

**MID-TEX DIVISION  
ATMOS ENERGY CORPORATION**

<b>RATE SCHEDULE:</b>	<b>I – INDUSTRIAL SALES</b>	
<b>APPLICABLE TO:</b>	<b>ALL CUSTOMERS IN THE MID-TEX DIVISION UNDER THE RRM TARIFF</b>	
<b>EFFECTIVE DATE:</b>	<b>Bills Rendered on or after 10/01/2023</b>	

**Application**

Applicable to Industrial Customers with a maximum daily usage (MDU) of less than 200 MMBtu per day for all natural gas provided at one Point of Delivery and measured through one meter. Service for Industrial Customers with an MDU equal to or greater than 200 MMBtu per day will be provided at Company's sole option and will require special contract arrangements between Company and Customer.

**Type of Service**

Where service of the type desired by Customer is not already available at the Point of Delivery, additional charges and special contract arrangements between Company and Customer may be required prior to service being furnished.

**Monthly Rate**

Customer's monthly bill will be calculated by adding the following Customer and MMBtu charges to the amounts due under the riders listed below:

<b>Charge</b>	<b>Amount</b>
Customer Charge per Meter	\$ 1,382.00 per month
First 0 MMBtu to 1,500 MMBtu	\$ 0.7484 per MMBtu <sup>1</sup>
Next 3,500 MMBtu	\$ 0.5963 per MMBtu <sup>1</sup>
All MMBtu over 5,000 MMBtu	\$ 0.2693 per MMBtu <sup>1</sup>

Gas Cost Recovery: Plus an amount for gas costs and upstream transportation costs calculated in accordance with Part (a) and Part (b), respectively, of Rider GCR.

Franchise Fee Adjustment: Plus an amount for franchise fees calculated in accordance with Rider FF. Rider FF is only applicable to customers inside the corporate limits of any incorporated municipality.

Tax Adjustment: Plus an amount for tax calculated in accordance with Rider TAX.

Surcharges: Plus an amount for surcharges calculated in accordance with the applicable rider(s).

**Curtailment Overpull Fee**

Upon notification by Company of an event of curtailment or interruption of Customer's deliveries, Customer will, for each MMBtu delivered in excess of the stated level of curtailment or interruption, pay Company 200% of the midpoint price for the Katy point listed in *Platts Gas Daily* published for the applicable Gas Day in the table entitled "Daily Price Survey."

**Replacement Index**

In the event the "midpoint" or "common" price for the Katy point listed in *Platts Gas Daily* in the table entitled "Daily Price Survey" is no longer published, Company will calculate the applicable imbalance fees

<sup>1</sup> The tiered commodity charges include the base rate amounts of \$0.5684, \$0.4163, and \$0.0893 per MMBtu, respectively, plus Securitization Regulatory Asset amounts related to financing costs in the amount of \$0.1800 per MMBtu until recovered.

**MID-TEX DIVISION  
ATMOS ENERGY CORPORATION**

<b>RATE SCHEDULE:</b>	<b>I – INDUSTRIAL SALES</b>	
<b>APPLICABLE TO:</b>	<b>ALL CUSTOMERS IN THE MID-TEX DIVISION UNDER THE RRM TARIFF</b>	
<b>EFFECTIVE DATE:</b>	<b>Bills Rendered on or after 10/01/2023</b>	

utilizing a daily price index recognized as authoritative by the natural gas industry and most closely approximating the applicable index.

**Agreement**

An Agreement for Gas Service may be required.

**Notice**

Service hereunder and the rates for services provided are subject to the orders of regulatory bodies having jurisdiction and to the Company's Tariff for Gas Service.

**Special Conditions**

In order to receive service under Rate I, Customer must have the type of meter required by Company. Customer must pay Company all costs associated with the acquisition and installation of the meter.

**Presumption of Plant Protection Level**

For service under this Rate Schedule, plant protection volumes are presumed to be 10% of normal, regular, historical usage as reasonably calculated by the Company in its sole discretion. If a customer believes it needs to be modeled at an alternative plant protection volume, it should contact the company at [mdtx.plantprotection@atmosenergy.com](mailto:mdtx.plantprotection@atmosenergy.com).

**MID-TEX DIVISION  
ATMOS ENERGY CORPORATION**

<b>RATE SCHEDULE:</b>	<b>T – TRANSPORTATION</b>	
<b>APPLICABLE TO:</b>	<b>ALL CUSTOMERS IN THE MID-TEX DIVISION UNDER THE RRM TARIFF</b>	
<b>EFFECTIVE DATE:</b>	<b>Bills Rendered on or after 10/01/2023</b>	

**Application**

Applicable, in the event that Company has entered into a Transportation Agreement, to a customer directly connected to the Atmos Energy Corp., Mid-Tex Division Distribution System (Customer) for the transportation of all natural gas supplied by Customer or Customer's agent at one Point of Delivery for use in Customer's facility.

**Type of Service**

Where service of the type desired by Customer is not already available at the Point of Delivery, additional charges and special contract arrangements between Company and Customer may be required prior to service being furnished.

**Monthly Rate**

Customer's bill will be calculated by adding the following Customer and MMBtu charges to the amounts and quantities due under the riders listed below:

<b>Charge</b>	<b>Amount</b>
Customer Charge per Meter	\$ 1,382.00 per month
First 0 MMBtu to 1,500 MMBtu	\$ 0.5684 per MMBtu
Next 3,500 MMBtu	\$ 0.4163 per MMBtu
All MMBtu over 5,000 MMBtu	\$ 0.0893 per MMBtu

Upstream Transportation Cost Recovery: Plus an amount for upstream transportation costs in accordance with Part (b) of Rider GCR.

Retention Adjustment: Plus a quantity of gas as calculated in accordance with Rider RA.

Franchise Fee Adjustment: Plus an amount for franchise fees calculated in accordance with Rider FF. Rider FF is only applicable to customers inside the corporate limits of any incorporated municipality.

Tax Adjustment: Plus an amount for tax calculated in accordance with Rider TAX.

Surcharges: Plus an amount for surcharges calculated in accordance with the applicable rider(s).

**Imbalance Fees**

All fees charged to Customer under this Rate Schedule will be charged based on the quantities determined under the applicable Transportation Agreement and quantities will not be aggregated for any Customer with multiple Transportation Agreements for the purposes of such fees.

**Monthly Imbalance Fees**

Customer shall pay Company the greater of (i) \$0.10 per MMBtu, or (ii) 150% of the difference per MMBtu between the highest and lowest "midpoint" price for the Katy point listed in *Platts Gas Daily* in the table entitled "Daily Price Survey" during such month, for the MMBtu of Customer's monthly Cumulative Imbalance, as defined in the applicable Transportation Agreement, at the end of each month that exceeds 10% of Customer's receipt quantities for the month.

**MID-TEX DIVISION  
ATMOS ENERGY CORPORATION**

<b>RATE SCHEDULE:</b>	<b>T – TRANSPORTATION</b>	
<b>APPLICABLE TO:</b>	<b>ALL CUSTOMERS IN THE MID-TEX DIVISION UNDER THE RRM TARIFF</b>	
<b>EFFECTIVE DATE:</b>	<b>Bills Rendered on or after 10/01/2023</b>	

**Curtailment Overpull Fee**

Upon notification by Company of an event of curtailment or interruption of Customer's deliveries, Customer will, for each MMBtu delivered in excess of the stated level of curtailment or interruption, pay Company 200% of the midpoint price for the Katy point listed in *Platts Gas Daily* published for the applicable Gas Day in the table entitled "Daily Price Survey."

**Replacement Index**

In the event the "midpoint" or "common" price for the Katy point listed in *Platts Gas Daily* in the table entitled "Daily Price Survey" is no longer published, Company will calculate the applicable imbalance fees utilizing a daily price index recognized as authoritative by the natural gas industry and most closely approximating the applicable index.

**Agreement**

A transportation agreement is required.

**Notice**

Service hereunder and the rates for services provided are subject to the orders of regulatory bodies having jurisdiction and to the Company's Tariff for Gas Service.

**Special Conditions**

In order to receive service under Rate T, customer must have the type of meter required by Company. Customer must pay Company all costs associated with the acquisition and installation of the meter.

**MID-TEX DIVISION  
ATMOS ENERGY CORPORATION**

<b>RIDER:</b>	<b>WNA – WEATHER NORMALIZATION ADJUSTMENT</b>	
<b>APPLICABLE TO:</b>	<b>ALL CUSTOMERS IN THE MID-TEX DIVISION UNDER THE RRM TARIFF</b>	
<b>EFFECTIVE DATE:</b>	<b>Bills Rendered on or after 10/01/2023</b>	

Provisions for Adjustment

The Commodity Charge per Ccf (100 cubic feet) for gas service set forth in any Rate Schedules utilized by the cities of the Mid-Tex Division service area for determining normalized winter period revenues shall be adjusted by an amount hereinafter described, which amount is referred to as the "Weather Normalization Adjustment." The Weather Normalization Adjustment shall apply to all temperature sensitive residential and commercial bills based on meters read during the revenue months of November through April. The five regional weather stations are Abilene, Austin, Dallas, Waco, and Wichita Falls.

Computation of Weather Normalization Adjustment

The Weather Normalization Adjustment Factor shall be computed to the nearest one-hundredth cent per Ccf by the following formula:

$$WNAF_i = R_i \frac{(HSF_i \times (NDD-ADD))}{(BL_i + (HSF_i \times ADD))}$$

Where

- $i$  = any particular Rate Schedule or billing classification within any such particular Rate Schedule that contains more than one billing classification
- $WNAF_i$  = Weather Normalization Adjustment Factor for the  $i^{th}$  rate schedule or classification expressed in cents per Ccf
- $R_i$  = Commodity Charge rate of temperature sensitive sales for the  $i^{th}$  schedule or classification.
- $HSF_i$  = heat sensitive factor for the  $i^{th}$  schedule or classification divided by the average bill count in that class
- $NDD$  = billing cycle normal heating degree days calculated as the simple ten-year average of actual heating degree days.
- $ADD$  = billing cycle actual heating degree days.
- $BL_i$  = base load sales for the  $i^{th}$  schedule or classification divided by the average bill count in that class

The Weather Normalization Adjustment for the  $j$ th customer in  $i$ th rate schedule is computed as:

$$WNA_i = WNAF_i \times q_{ij}$$

Where  $q_{ij}$  is the relevant sales quantity for the  $j$ th customer in  $i$ th rate schedule.

**MID-TEX DIVISION  
ATMOS ENERGY CORPORATION**

<b>RIDER:</b>	<b>WNA – WEATHER NORMALIZATION ADJUSTMENT</b>	
<b>APPLICABLE TO:</b>	<b>ALL CUSTOMERS IN THE MID-TEX DIVISION UNDER THE RRM TARIFF</b>	
<b>EFFECTIVE DATE:</b>	<b>Bills Rendered on or after 10/01/2023</b>	

Base Use/Heat Use Factors

Weather Station	<u>Residential</u>		<u>Commercial</u>	
	Base use <u>Ccf</u>	Heat use <u>Ccf/HDD</u>	Base use <u>Ccf</u>	Heat use <u>Ccf/HDD</u>
Abilene	9.51	0.1415	88.91	0.7010
Austin	8.87	0.1213	213.30	0.7986
Dallas	12.54	0.2007	185.00	0.9984
Waco	8.81	0.1325	125.26	0.7313
Wichita Falls	10.36	0.1379	122.10	0.6083

Weather Normalization Adjustment (WNA) Report

On or before June 1 of each year, the company posts on its website at [atmosenergy.com/mtx-wna](http://atmosenergy.com/mtx-wna), in Excel format, a *Weather Normalization Adjustment (WNA) Report* to show how the company calculated its WNAs factor during the preceding winter season. Additionally, on or before June 1 of each year, the company files one hard copy and an Excel version of the *WNA Report* with the Railroad Commission of Texas' Gas Services Division, addressed to the Director of that Division.

**ATMOS ENERGY CORP., MID-TEX DIVISION  
MID-TEX RATE REVIEW MECHANISM  
PENSIONS AND RETIREE MEDICAL BENEFITS FOR CITIES APPROVAL  
TEST YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 2022**

Line No.	Description	Shared Services		Mid-Tex Direct			Adjustment Total
		Pension Account Plan	Post-Employment Benefit Plan	Pension Account Plan	Post-Employment Benefit Plan	Supplemental Executive Benefit Plan	
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)
1	Proposed Benefits Benchmark -						
	Fiscal Year 2023 Willis Towers Watson Report as adjusted (1) (2) (3)	\$ 1,434,339	\$ (518,336)	\$ 2,336,419	\$ (2,678,818)	\$ 267,917	
2	Allocation Factor	44.92%	44.92%	78.74%	78.74%	100.00%	
3	Proposed Benefits Benchmark Costs Allocated to Mid-Tex (Ln 1 x Ln 2)	\$ 644,336	\$ (232,848)	\$ 1,839,667	\$ (2,109,267)	\$ 267,917	
4	O&M and Capital Allocation Factor	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	100.00%	
5	Proposed Benefits Benchmark Costs to Approve (Ln 3 x Ln 4)	\$ 644,336	\$ (232,848)	\$ 1,839,667	\$ (2,109,267)	\$ 267,917	\$ 409,804
6							
7	O&M Expense Factor (WP_F-2.3, Ln 2)	78.60%	78.60%	39.63%	39.63%	11.00%	
8							
9	Summary of Costs to Approve (1):						
10	Total Pension Account Plan	\$ 506,464		\$ 729,006			\$ 1,235,469
11	Total Post-Employment Benefit Plan		\$ (183,024)		\$ (835,840)		(1,018,864)
12	Total Supplemental Executive Benefit Plan					\$ 29,471	29,471
13	Total (Ln 10 + Ln 11 + Ln 12)	\$ 506,464	\$ (183,024)	\$ 729,006	\$ (835,840)	\$ 29,471	\$ 246,076



**ATMOS ENERGY CORP., MID-TEX DIVISION  
MID-TEX RATE REVIEW MECHANISM  
AVERAGE BILL COMPARISON - BASE RATES  
TEST YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 2022**

Line No.	Description	Current	Proposed	Change	
				Amount	Percent
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
1	<b><u>Rate R @ 43.6 Ccf</u></b>				
2	Customer charge	\$ 21.55			
3	Consumption charge 43.6 CCF X \$ 0.36223 =	15.79			
4	Rider GCR Part A 43.6 CCF X \$ 0.63625 =	27.74			
5	Rider GCR Part B 43.6 CCF X \$ 0.41732 =	18.20			
6	Subtotal	\$ 83.28			
7	Rider FF & Rider TAX \$ 83.28 X 0.06237 =	5.19			
8	Total	<u>\$ 88.47</u>			
9					
10	Customer charge		\$ 22.25		
11	Consumption charge 43.6 CCF X \$ 0.48567 =		21.18		
12	Rider GCR Part A 43.6 CCF X \$ 0.63625 =		27.74		
13	Rider GCR Part B 43.6 CCF X \$ 0.41732 =		18.20		
14	Subtotal		\$ 89.37		
15	Rider FF & Rider TAX \$ 89.37 X 0.06237 =		5.57		
16	Total		<u>\$ 94.94</u>	\$ 6.47	7.31%
17					

**ATMOS ENERGY CORP., MID-TEX DIVISION  
MID-TEX RATE REVIEW MECHANISM  
AVERAGE BILL COMPARISON - BASE RATES  
TEST YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 2022**

Line No.	Description	Current	Proposed	Change	
				Amount	Percent
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
18	<b><u>Rate C @ 356.6 Ccf</u></b>				
19	Customer charge	\$ 63.50			
20	Consumption charge 356.6 CCF X \$ 0.14137 =	50.41			
21	Rider GCR Part A 356.6 CCF X \$ 0.63625 =	226.86			
22	Rider GCR Part B 356.6 CCF X \$ 0.30202 =	107.69			
23	Subtotal	\$ 448.46			
24	Rider FF & Rider TAX \$ 448.46 X 0.06237 =	27.97			
25	Total	<u>\$ 476.43</u>			
26					
27	Customer charge		\$ 72.00		
28	Consumption charge 356.6 CCF X \$ 0.18280 =		65.18		
29	Rider GCR Part A 356.6 CCF X \$ 0.63625 =		226.86		
30	Rider GCR Part B 356.6 CCF X \$ 0.30202 =		107.69		
31	Subtotal		\$ 471.73		
32	Rider FF & Rider TAX \$ 471.73 X 0.06237 =		29.42		
33	Total		<u>\$ 501.15</u>	<u>\$ 24.72</u>	<u>5.19%</u>
34					

**ATMOS ENERGY CORP., MID-TEX DIVISION  
MID-TEX RATE REVIEW MECHANISM  
AVERAGE BILL COMPARISON - BASE RATES  
TEST YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 2022**

Line No.	Description							Current	Proposed	Change	
										Amount	Percent
	(a)							(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
35	<b><u>Rate I @ 1720 MMBTU</u></b>										
36	Customer charge							\$ 1,204.50			
37	Consumption charge	1,500	MMBTU	X	\$	0.4939	=	740.85			
38	Consumption charge	220	MMBTU	X	\$	0.3617	=	79.64			
39	Consumption charge	0	MMBTU	X	\$	0.0776	=	-			
40	Rider GCR Part A	1,720	MMBTU	X	\$	6.2134	=	10,688.12			
41	Rider GCR Part B	1,720	MMBTU	X	\$	0.6267	=	1,078.08			
42	Subtotal							\$ 13,791.19			
43	Rider FF & Rider TAX	\$13,791.19		X		0.06237	=	860.17			
44	Total							<u>\$ 14,651.36</u>			
45											
46	Customer charge								\$ 1,382.00		
47	Consumption charge	1,500	MMBTU	X	\$	0.7484	=		1,122.62		
48	Consumption charge	220	MMBTU	X	\$	0.5963	=		131.30		
49	Consumption charge	0	MMBTU	X	\$	0.2693	=		-		
50	Rider GCR Part A	1,720	MMBTU	X	\$	6.2134	=		10,688.12		
51	Rider GCR Part B	1,720	MMBTU	X	\$	0.6267	=		1,078.08		
52	Subtotal								\$ 14,402.12		
53	Rider FF & Rider TAX	\$14,402.12		X		0.06237	=		898.28		
54	Total								<u>\$ 15,300.40</u>	<u>\$ 649.04</u>	<u>4.43%</u>
55											

**ATMOS ENERGY CORP., MID-TEX DIVISION  
MID-TEX RATE REVIEW MECHANISM  
AVERAGE BILL COMPARISON - BASE RATES  
TEST YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 2022**

Line No.	Description	Current	Proposed	Change	
				Amount	Percent
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
56	<b>Rate T @ 4720 MMBTU</b>				
57	Customer charge	\$ 1,204.50			
58	Consumption charge 1,500 MMBTU X \$ 0.4939 =	740.85			
59	Consumption charge 3,220 MMBTU X \$ 0.3617 =	1,164.50			
60	Consumption charge 0 MMBTU X \$ 0.0776 =	-			
61	Rider GCR Part B 4,720 MMBTU X \$ 0.6267 =	2,957.85			
62	Subtotal	\$ 6,067.70			
63	Rider FF & Rider TAX \$ 6,067.70 X 0.06237 =	378.45			
64	Total	<u>\$ 6,446.15</u>			
65					
66	Customer charge		\$ 1,382.00		
67	Consumption charge 1,500 MMBTU X \$ 0.5684 =	852.60			
68	Consumption charge 3,220 MMBTU X \$ 0.4163 =	1,340.29			
69	Consumption charge 0 MMBTU X \$ 0.0893 =	-			
70	Rider GCR Part B 4,720 MMBTU X \$ 0.6267 =	2,957.85			
71	Subtotal	\$ 6,532.74			
72	Rider FF & Rider TAX \$ 6,532.74 X 0.06237 =	407.45			
73	Total	<u>\$ 6,940.19</u>	<u>\$ 494.04</u>		7.66%



# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 15 p. 1 of 4

Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Consider approval of a resolution finding that Oncor Electric Delivery Company LLC's application to increase rates within the Town of Cross Roads should be denied including utilizing legal and consulting services of Lloyd Gosselink Rochelle and Townsend, P.C. and requiring reimbursement of the Oncor Cities Steering Committee.

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

Oncor Electric Delivery Company ("Oncor" or "the Company") filed an application on or about June 30, 2023 to amend its Distribution and Cost Recovery Factor (DCRF) and update its Mobile Generation Riders to increase distribution rates by \$152.78 million. Adopting the attached resolution will authorize the Town to participate in the Oncor Cities Steering Committee and deny the rate increase to allow for review and negotiation of the rates.

Included for additional information is a model staff report prepared by representatives of the Oncor Cities Steering Committee.

Recommended Action:

Staff recommends approval.

Attachments:

Model Staff Report

Proposed Resolution

## **MODEL STAFF REPORT REGARDING ONCOR ELECTRIC DELIVERY COMPANY, LLC'S DISTRIBUTION COST RECOVERY FACTOR AND MOBILE GENERATION RIDERS FILING**

\*\*\*

On June 30, 2023, Oncor Electric Delivery Company, LLC ("Oncor" or "Company") filed an Application to Amend its Distribution Cost Recovery Factor ("DCRF") and Update its Mobile Generation Riders to increase distribution rates within each of the cities in its service area. In the filing, the Company asserts it is seeking an increase in distribution revenues of approximately \$152.78 million. The Company is also seeking to update its Rider Mobile Generation and Rider Wholesale Mobile Generation to recover revenue related to mobile generation unit leasing and operation. The Rider would recover approximately \$1.07 million.

The resolution authorizes the City to join with the Steering Committee of Cities Served by Oncor ("OCSC") to evaluate the filing, determine whether the filing complies with law, and if lawful, to determine what further strategy, including settlement, to pursue.

### **Purpose of the Resolution:**

The purpose of the Resolution is to deny the DCRF application proposed by Oncor.

### **Explanation of "Be It Resolved" Paragraphs:**

1. This section authorizes the City to participate with OCSC as a party in the Company's DCRF filing, PUC Docket No. 55190.
2. This section authorizes the hiring of Lloyd Gosselink and consultants to review the filing, negotiate with the Company, and make recommendations to the City regarding reasonable rates. Additionally, it authorizes Cities to direct any necessary administrative proceedings or court litigation associated with an appeal of this application filed with the PUC.
3. This paragraph finds that the Company's application is unreasonable and should be denied.
4. This section states that the Company's current rates shall not be changed.
5. The Company will reimburse Cities for their reasonable rate case expenses. Legal counsel and consultants approved by Cities will submit monthly invoices that will be forwarded to Oncor for reimbursement.
6. This section recites that the Resolution was passed at a meeting that was open to the public and that the consideration of the Resolution was properly noticed.
7. This section provides that Oncor and counsel for OCSC will be notified of the City's action by sending a copy of the approved and signed Resolution to counsel.

**TOWN OF CROSS ROADS  
RESOLUTION NO. 2023-\_\_\_\_\_**

**A RESOLUTION OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS FINDING THAT ONCOR ELECTRIC DELIVERY COMPANY LLC'S APPLICATION TO AMEND ITS DISTRIBUTION COST RECOVERY FACTOR AND UPDATE GENERATION RIDERS TO INCREASE DISTRIBUTION RATES WITHIN THE TOWN SHOULD BE DENIED; AUTHORIZING PARTICIPATION WITH THE STEERING COMMITTEE OF CITIES SERVED BY ONCOR; AUTHORIZING HIRING OF LEGAL COUNSEL; FINDING THAT THE TOWN'S REASONABLE RATE CASE EXPENSES SHALL BE REIMBURSED BY THE COMPANY; FINDING THAT THE MEETING AT WHICH THIS RESOLUTION IS PASSED IS OPEN TO THE PUBLIC AS REQUIRED BY LAW; REQUIRING NOTICE OF THIS RESOLUTION TO THE COMPANY AND LEGAL COUNSEL.**

WHEREAS, the TOWN of CROSS ROADS, Texas ("TOWN") is an electric utility customer of Oncor Electric Delivery Company LLC. ("Oncor" or "Company"), and a regulatory authority with an interest in the rates and charges of Oncor; and

WHEREAS, the TOWN is a member of the Steering Committee of Cities Served by Oncor ("OCSC"), a membership of similarly situated cities served by Oncor that have joined together to efficiently and cost effectively review and respond to electric issues affecting rates charged in Oncor's service area; and

WHEREAS, on or about June 29, 2023, Oncor filed with the TOWN an Application to Amend its Distribution Cost Recovery Factor and Update Mobile Generation Riders, PUC Docket No. 55190, seeking to increase electric distribution rates by approximately \$152.78 million and update Oncor's Rider Mobile Generation and Rider Wholesale Mobile Generation to recover \$1.07 million related to mobile generation facilities; and

WHEREAS, all electric utility customers residing in the TOWN will be impacted by this ratemaking proceeding if it is granted; and

WHEREAS, OCSC is coordinating its review of Oncor's DCRF filing with designated attorneys and consultants to resolve issues in the Company's application; and

WHEREAS, OCSC members and attorneys recommend that members deny the DCRF.

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS:

Section 1. That the TOWN is authorized to participate with Cities in PUC Docket No. 55190.

Section 2. That subject to the right to terminate employment at any time, the TOWN hereby authorizes the hiring of the law firm of Lloyd Gosselink and consultants to negotiate with the Company, make recommendations to the TOWN regarding reasonable rates, and to direct any necessary administrative proceedings or court litigation associated with an appeal of this application filed with the PUC.

Section 3. That the rates proposed by Oncor to be recovered through its DCRF charged to customers located within the TOWN limits, are hereby found to be unreasonable and shall be denied.

Section 4. That the Company shall continue to charge its existing rates to customers within the TOWN.

Section 5. That the TOWN's reasonable rate case expenses shall be reimbursed in full by Oncor within 30 days of presentation of an invoice to Oncor.

Section 6. That it is hereby officially found and determined that the meeting at which this Resolution is passed is open to the public as required by law and the public notice of the time, place, and purpose of said meeting was given as required.

Section 7. That a copy of this Resolution shall be sent to J. Michael Sherburne, Vice President – Regulatory, Oncor Electric Delivery Company LLC, 1616 Woodall Rodgers Freeway, Dallas, Texas 75202; to Tab R. Urbantke, Hunton Andrews Kurth LLP, 1445 Ross Avenue, Suite 3700, Dallas, Texas 75202; and to Thomas L. Brocato, General Counsel to OCSC, at Lloyd Gosselink Rochelle & Townsend, 816 Congress Ave., Suite 1900, Austin, Texas 78701.

PASSED AND APPROVED this **21st** day of **August, 2023**.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Mayor

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_  
TOWN Secretary

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

\_\_\_\_\_  
TOWN Attorney





# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 16 p. 1 of 8

Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Consider approval of a contract for Environmental Health Inspections with Bradley Tucker Investments, LLC, dba Instant Inspector, and authorize the Mayor to execute the contract.

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

On July 28, 2023, John Glover provided the Town with 30 days' notice of cancellation of the current contract for environmental health inspections due to Mr. Glover's desire to retire. Concurrently, Staff had been researching alternatives for health inspections identifying Bureau Veritas and Instant Inspector as primary alternatives. Instant Inspector provides services to Little Elm, Pilot Point, Sanger and Farmers Branch. Staff interviewed Bradley Strange, owner of Instant Inspector, and determined based on previous experience with the alternative, Mr. Strange would provide superior service to the Town. Mr. Strange's services include Staff access to online inspection reports and ultimately the ability to add QR codes to health permits displayed in each facility that will link back to the restaurants inspection history.

Currently, Mr. Glover charges between \$80-\$100 per inspection/plan review. Instant Inspector's fees are generally \$125-\$150. These fees are passed along to the establishments. Staff is currently working on amendments to the Town's fee schedule for the September meeting and will include the adjustment at that time.

Recommended Action:

Staff recommends of awarding a contract for Environmental Health Inspections to Bradley Tucker, LLC, dba Instant Inspector and authorize the Mayor to execute the associated contract.

Attachments:

Proposed Professional Services Agreement

## **PROFESSIONAL SERVICES AGREEMENT**

This PROFESSIONAL SERVICES AGREEMENT ("Agreement") is entered into as of the 21th day of August, 2023, (the "Effective Date") by and between the Town of Cross Roads, Texas, (the "TOWN"), and Bradley Tucker Investments, LLC, dba Instant Inspector, a Texas limited liability company, (the "CONTRACTOR") (individually referred to as a "Party" and collectively as the "Parties").

WITNESSETH:

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and mutual covenants hereinafter contained, the Parties hereto agree as follows:

### 1. Services.

The CONTRACTOR shall perform the services set forth in **Exhibit A**, attached hereto ("the Services").

### 2. Compensation and Reimbursement.

2.1 Town shall pay CONTRACTOR for services rendered and invoiced based on the fee schedule set forth in **Exhibit B**. CONTRACTOR agrees that CONTRACTOR will not hold the TOWN liable for any additional compensation beyond the above noted rate without prior written approval of the TOWN which approval TOWN shall not unreasonably withhold or delay.

2.2 CONTRACTOR shall submit invoices as services are performed. TOWN shall then pay the CONTRACTOR the total amount of the statement which is validly due within thirty (30) days. All payments made under this Agreement shall be made from currently available funds.

2.3 In the event TOWN should request additional services not set forth in Exhibit A, CONTRACTOR and TOWN shall agree on the compensation for those services prior to performance by CONTRACTOR. Performance of these additional services may be within or without the term of the contract set forth in Section 3 of this Agreement. Under no circumstances will CONTRACTOR perform additional services without prior written authorization from TOWN.

### 3. Term.

3.1 The term of this Agreement shall be one year from the Effective Date and shall automatically renew for an additional period of one year unless cancelled by either party. This Agreement shall be subject to termination upon a ninety (90) day written notice at any time by either Party. In the event of termination prior to the completion of the Services for reasons other than for cause, payment shall be made for services performed through the effective termination date. This payment shall be the TOWN's sole obligation to the CONTRACTOR. In addition, upon termination or expiration of this Agreement, CONTRACTOR shall return to TOWN any and all equipment, documents, or materials, and all copies made thereof, which CONTRACTOR received from, and/or developed for TOWN for the purposes of this Agreement.

3.2 In the event no funds or insufficient funds are appropriated by the TOWN in any fiscal period for any payments due hereunder, TOWN will notify CONTRACTOR of such occurrence and this Agreement shall terminate on the last day of the fiscal period for which appropriations were received without penalty or expense to the TOWN of any kind whatsoever, except as to the portions of the payments herein agreed upon for which funds shall have been appropriated.

4. Indemnification. CONTRACTOR AGREES TO INDEMNIFY, DEFEND AND HOLD HARMLESS THE TOWN, ITS COUNCIL MEMBERS, OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AGENTS, REPRESENTATIVES, INSURERS AND ATTORNEYS (THE "TOWN PARTIES") FOR **ANY AND ALL** CLAIMS FOR DAMAGES, PERSONAL INJURY AND/OR DEATH THAT MAY BE ASSERTED AGAINST THE TOWN PARTIES ARISING FROM THE NEGLIGENCE, IN WHOLE OR IN PART, OF CONTRACTOR, THE TOWN PARTIES, OR THEIR PERFORMANCE HEREUNDER. THE FOREGOING NOTWITHSTANDING, THE PARTIES HERETO RESERVE THE RIGHT TO ALL AVAILABLE LEGAL DEFENSES AND ALL PROTECTIONS, IMMUNITIES AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY PROVIDED BY THE TEXAS TORT CLAIMS ACT, THE TEXAS AND UNITED STATES CONSTITUTIONS, COMMON LAW, OR OTHERWISE RELATIVE TO THESE PARTIES. THE PROVISIONS OF THIS INDEMNIFICATION ARE SOLELY FOR THE BENEFIT OF THE PARTIES HERETO AND NOT INTENDED TO CREATE OR GRANT ANY RIGHTS, CONTRACTUAL OR OTHERWISE, TO ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY.

5. Insurance. CONTRACTOR agrees to provide at all times during the term of this Agreement the following insurance policies with the minimum limits:

A. Commercial General Liability Insurance:

\$1,000,000 - each occurrence  
\$2,000,000 - aggregate

The policy shall be made on an occurrence basis, not claims-made basis.

B. Automobile Liability Insurance:

\$1,000,000 - combined single limit

C. Workers Compensation Insurance:

Statutory limits

D. Professional Liability Insurance:

\$1,000,000 - each claim  
\$1,000,000 - aggregate

All insurance and certificate(s) of insurance shall contain the following provisions: (1) name TOWN as additional insured as to all applicable coverage with the exception of Workers Compensation Insurance and Professional Liability Insurance; and (2) provide for at least thirty (30) days prior written notice to TOWN for cancellation or non-renewal of

the insurance; (3) provide for a waiver of subrogation against TOWN for injuries, including death, property damage, or any other loss to the extent the same is covered by the proceeds of insurance, except for Professional Liability Insurance coverage. CONTRACTOR shall provide written notice to TOWN of any material change of or to the insurance required herein. A certificate of insurance evidencing the required insurance and all endorsements shall be submitted prior to commencement of services.

6. Notices.

All notices and billings shall be in writing and sent to the following addresses:

To TOWN (billings):                      Town of Cross Roads,  
Texas  
3201 US Hwy 380, Suite 105  
Cross Roads, Texas 76227

To CONTRACTOR:                      Bradley Tucker Investments, LLC  
Attn: Bradley Strange  
539 W. Commerce St, Suite 1601  
Dallas, Texas 75208

7. General.

7.1 At all times during the terms of this Agreement, CONTRACTOR shall be and remain certified by the State of Texas as a Professional Registered Sanitarian. If the State of Texas ever revokes or suspends the certification held by CONTRACTOR, CONTRACTOR shall immediately notify TOWN, no later than two (2) business days of receipt of such revocation or suspension.

CONTRACTOR shall comply with all Federal, State, and County laws, ordinances, regulations, safety orders, resolutions and building codes relating or applicable to services to be performed under this Agreement.

7.2 CONTRACTOR shall perform the Services as an independent contractor and shall not be considered an employee of TOWN for any purpose whatsoever, including, but not limited to, entitlement to TOWN employee benefits. CONTRACTOR hereby expressly waives any claim or entitlement to such benefits. CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for payment of all federal and state taxes and assessments of any nature arising from the

performance of this Agreement. CONTRACTOR understands that TOWN will not withhold federal or state taxes from fees paid under this Agreement, the payment of such taxes being the sole responsibility of CONTRACTOR.

7.3 The TOWN, at its own expense, shall have the right at all reasonable times during normal business hours and upon at least twenty-four (24) hours advance notice, to audit, to examine, and to make copies of or extracts from the books of account and records maintained by CONTRACTOR with respect to the Services. If such audit shall disclose overpayment by TOWN to CONTRACTOR, written notice of such overpayment shall be provided to CONTRACTOR and the amount of overpayment shall be promptly reimbursed by CONTRACTOR to the TOWN. In the event any such overpayment is not paid within ten (10) days after receipt of such notice, the unpaid amount of such overpayment shall bear interest at the rate of one percent (1%) per month from the date of such notice until paid.

7.4 The waiver or failure of either Party to exercise in any respect any right provided for in this Agreement shall not be deemed a waiver of any further right under this Agreement.

7.5 If any provision of this Agreement is invalid, illegal, or unenforceable under any applicable statute, court decision, or rule of law, it is to that extent to be deemed omitted. The remainder of the Agreement shall be valid and enforceable to the maximum extent possible.

7.6 This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of Texas. Venue for any action arising from this Agreement shall be exclusively in Denton County, Texas.

7.7 This Agreement may not be modified, altered or amended except by written instrument duly executed by both Parties.

7.8 CONTRACTOR shall not assign this Agreement, or any part thereof, without the prior written consent of the TOWN.

7.9 The above shall constitute the entire understanding between CONTRACTOR and TOWN respecting the Services described herein.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Parties hereto have duly executed this Agreement as of the date first above written.

*(Signature Page to Follow)*



## **EXHIBIT A SCOPE OF SERVICES**

Consultant will provide the following services:

- Two times per year, on-site, routine Environmental Health Inspections for all permitted food establishments for compliance with Texas Food Establishment Rules 2015 or 2021, as adopted by the Town of Cross Roads.

- o List of food establishments to be provided by the TOWN.

- Health inspections for public or semi-public pool and spa inspection in Cross Roads for compliance with the Department of State Health Services (DSHS) Rules concerning public and semi-public swimming pools and spas, as adopted by the TOWN.

- o List of public and semi-public pool and spa to be provided by the TOWN.

- Copies of inspection reports on monthly basis to the TOWN for record retention.

### ***Closing Business***

If, during inspection, it is determined that a priority item violations exist that possess an imminent danger to public health and cannot be fixed immediately, or an approved alternative procedure has not been implemented, Consultant shall inform the Town of Cross Roads prior to closing the establishment.

If the permitted facility is ordered closed, the reason for closure shall be clearly stated on the inspection form.

### **Steps for closing a food establishment:**

1. Notify the Town Administrator or designee of the findings and observations.
2. Contact the Town Administrator or designee to seek recommendations on the situation or if you are uncertain about what action is appropriate or if you have questions about your responsibilities or require assistance.
3. Document the violation by recording a complete written report and photographs where appropriate.
4. Notify the food establishment manager or person in charge of the reason(s) for the closure including a discussion of the corrective actions necessary to remedy the situation and re-open the facility.
5. Prepare a closure notice stating the reason for the closure and ensure copies are provided to the manager and a copy saved in the file.
6. Provide instructions to the food establishment operator regarding notification to the Town when they have corrected all necessary deficiencies needed to reopen.

**EXHIBIT B  
FEES FOR SERVICES**

Permit Type	Fee (Per Inspection)
Food Establishment	\$125.00
Food Truck	\$100.00
Temporary Event	\$150/hour min. 2 hour
Pool & Spa	\$125.00 per body of water
Restaurant Plan Review	\$150.00
Pool & Spa Plan Review	\$150.00
Complaint Investigation	\$100.00
Follow-up Inspection	\$75.00





Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Consider approval of an ordinance adopting the 2018 International Building Code, 2018 International Residential Code, 2018 International Energy Conservation Code, 2015 International Mechanical Code, 2018 International Plumbing Code, 2018 International Fire Code, 2018 International Fuel and Gas Code and the 2017 National Electrical Code with local amendments.

Prepared by:

Rodney Patterson, Building Official

Description:

Every six to 10 years, Town staff reviews our currently adopted building, fire, electrical, mechanical, plumbing, energy conservation and residential codes to determine whether it is an appropriate time to update them to a newer version for regulatory purposes. With new advances in technology as well as information learned from past disasters, the codes are constantly evolving with a critical eye on improving occupant safety and protecting life in newly constructed and renovated structures. Town Staff reviews these updates and recommends adoption and/or changes in order to create a safer built environment for our citizens.

The Town has currently adopted the 2012 International suite of codes as well as the 2008 National Electrical Code. In addition, the Town has adopted the 2015 International Energy Conservation Code as a requirement from the Texas State Legislature. Per a previous memo which has been provided as an attachment, the process for recommending code changes, the code change process, as well as adoption at all levels of government has been outlined. This is the last step in the code adoption process in order to be able to enforce the codes at the municipal level. The attached ordinance provides for an effective date of October 1, 2023, which allows time to notify contractors and sets the date at the beginning of the fiscal year.

As a point of note, the International Code Council has published the 2021 International Code Series, however, it is common for municipalities to wait a few years before adopting new codes to determine if there are any unforeseen issues with amendments as well as code changes which might have unforeseen consequences.

Recommended Action:

Staff recommends approval of the ordinance which includes the North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) amendments as revised.

Attachments:

Memo on 2018 Codes  
Ordinance  
NCTCOG Amendments

## **STAFF MEMO**

### **The International Codes**

The International Code Council was formed in 1994 by three regional code development organizations in the U.S. – the Building Officials and Code Administrators International, Inc. (BOCA), the International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO), and the Southern Building Code Congress International, Inc. (SBCCI) – at the request of the design and construction industry to develop a single set of comprehensive national model codes. The first I-Code was published by the consolidated group in 1995, and in 2003 the three legacy organizations dissolved their independent operations and merged into one single, incorporated entity, the International Code Council. ICC has developed into the industry standard for most of the countries around the world.

The ICC Board currently reviews and updates their individual codes on a 3-year cycle. To obtain input on updating the codes, ICC holds various code hearings where it receives feedback and comments from both industry representatives and governmental members. Feedback is provided through a series of code forums where industry and municipal sector representatives submit code change proposals which are reviewed by different code development boards for recommendation to the membership for approval. Code changes are voted on at the code development conferences and once the changes are approved or denied the codes are updated and published.

In addition, the codes go through several additional layers of review ending at the local level where the codes to be enforced by each municipality are approved by individual Town Councils. For example, in our area, the levels of review include the State of Texas, North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG), and our local Town staff, contracted employees, and Town Council.

#### **State input:**

The Texas State legislature intermittently proposes code adoptions for the entire State. However, these are generally done every 6 to 9 years. In the most recent statewide adoption of the 2015 International Energy Conservation Code, the legislature stipulated that the State adopted version of the code could not be updated any more frequently than once every 6 years.

#### **NCTCOG input:**

As a part of the code adoption process, the North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) has developed several individual boards which review each code as they are published and make recommendations for localized amendments to the codes which individual Municipalities may adopt in order to create a cohesive set of regulations for the entire 18 county area covered by NCTCOG.

**Town staff, contract employees, and Town Council input:**

Town Staff and contract employees review the codes and related amendments to the codes proposed by the NCTCOG and provide their recommended final version based upon previous amendments and recommendations from Town Council. Attached is the final version of the codes and proposed amendments staff is recommending for adoption. Some of the more notable code amendments the Town has chosen to adopt in the past include:

1. Size of storage sheds, agricultural buildings, gazebo's, pergola's or similar structures exempted from permitting is increased from 200 sq. ft. to 400 sq. ft. (Local)
2. Fire sprinkler requirements for most uses reduced from 10,000 sq. ft. to 6,000 sq. ft. (NCTCOG).

**TOWN OF CROSS ROADS  
ORDINANCE NO. \_\_\_\_\_**

**AN ORDINANCE OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS, AMENDING SUBPART (1) OF SUBSECTION (b) OF ARTICLE 3.02 (“BUILDING CODES ADOPTED”) OF CHAPTER 3 (“BUILDING REGULATIONS”) OF THE CODE OF ORDINANCES OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS, ADOPTING THE PROVISIONS OF THE INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE, 2018 EDITION, THE INTERNATIONAL RESIDENTIAL CODE, 2018 EDITION, THE INTERNATIONAL ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE, 2015 EDITION, THE INTERNATIONAL MECHANICAL CODE, 2018 EDITION, THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE, 2018 EDITION, THE INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE, 2018 EDITION, THE INTERNATIONAL FUEL GAS CODE, 2018 EDITION, AND THE NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE, 2017 EDITION; PROVIDING FOR AMENDMENTS TO EACH OF THE CODES ADOPTED HEREBY; PROVIDING A REPEALING CLAUSE; PROVIDING A SAVINGS CLAUSE; PROVIDING A SEVERABILITY CLAUSE; PROVIDING FOR A PENALTY OF FINE NOT TO EXCEED THE SUM OF TWO THOUSAND (\$2,000.00) DOLLARS FOR EACH OFFENSE; AND, PROVIDING AN EFFECTIVE DATE.**

**BE IT ORDAINED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS:**

**SECTION 1.** That subpart (1) of Article 3.02(b) of Chapter 3 (“Building Regulations”) of the Code of Ordinances of the Town of Cross Roads, Texas, be and is hereby amended, without amendment, repeal or change to any other part, subpart or provision of Article 3.02, such that subsection (b) (1) of Article 3.02 shall read in its entirety as follows:

**“CHAPTER 3  
BUILDING REGULATIONS**

**ARTICLE 3.02 BUILDING CODES ADOPTED**

(b) (1) Certain documents, copies of which are on file and are open for inspection

---

by the public in the office of the town secretary and building official, being marked and designated as follows:

- (A) International Building Code, 2018 edition;
- (B) International Residential Code, 2018 edition;
- (C) International Energy Conservation Code, 2015 edition;
- (D) International Plumbing Code, 2018 edition;
- (E) International Mechanical Code, 2018 edition;
- (F) International Fuel Gas Code, 2018 edition;
- (G) International Fire Code, 2018 edition;
- (H) National Electrical Code 2017 edition;
- (I) International Residential Code 2018 edition, appendix G for swimming pools, spas and hot tubs;
- (J) Uniform Code for the Abatement of Dangerous Buildings, 1997 edition;

are adopted as the codes of the town for regulating the erection, construction, enlargement, alteration, repair, moving, removal, demolition, conversion, occupancy, maintenance, equipment, use, height, area and maintenance of all buildings or structures in the town; providing for issuance of permits and collection of fees for such permits; and all the regulations, provisions, conditions and terms of such publications referenced in this subsection, all of which are on file in the office of the town secretary and building official, are referred to, adopted and made a part of this article as if fully set out in this article. All references in such codes to boards of appeal shall refer to the board of adjustment of the town. Certain amendments to each of the codes referred to herein are adopted as a part of said codes and shall be maintained, together with each code to which the amendments apply, in the office of the town secretary and building official.

...

**SECTION 2.** That the codes adopted herein are adopted with certain amendments, true and correct copies of which are identified as Exhibit “A” attached hereto and incorporated herein, and which amendments are incorporated as a part of each of the codes adopted by this ordinance. The amendments adopted herein shall be maintained on file in the offices of the town secretary and building official and shall be attached to each of the codes adopted by this ordinance.

**SECTION 3.** That all ordinances of the Town of Cross Roads, Texas, in conflict with the provisions of this ordinance be and the same are hereby repealed and all other ordinances of the

Town not in conflict with the provisions of the ordinance shall remain in full force and effect.

**SECTION 4.** That an offense committed before the effective date of this ordinance is governed by the prior law and the provisions of the Code of Ordinances and ordinances of the Town, as amended, in effect when the offense was committed and the former law is continued in effect for this purpose.

**SECTION 5.** That should any section, paragraph, sentence, subdivision, clause, phrase or provision of this ordinance be adjudged or held to be unconstitutional, illegal, or invalid, the same shall not affect the validity of this ordinance as a whole or any part or provision hereof other than the part so decided to be unconstitutional, illegal, or invalid and shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this ordinance or any other provision of the Code of Ordinances of the Town of Cross Roads.

**SECTION 6.** That any person, firm or corporation violating any of the provisions or terms of this ordinance or the codes adopted hereby, as same may be amended, shall be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor and subject to a penalty as provided for in this ordinance, and upon conviction shall be punished by fine not to exceed the sum of Two Thousand Dollars (\$2,000.00) for each offense, and each and every day such violation shall continue shall constitute a separate offense.

**SECTION 7.** That this ordinance shall take effect immediately from and after its passage and the publication of the caption as the law in such cases provides.

**DULY ADOPTED** by the Town Council of Cross Roads, Texas on the ? day of ?, 20--.

APPROVED:

\_\_\_\_\_  
MAYOR

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_  
TOWN SECRETARY

---

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

---

CITY ATTORNEY TOWN OF CROSS ROADS

## EXHIBIT “A”

### AMENDMENTS TO INTERNATIONAL CODE

#### Amendments to the 2018 International Building Code

The following sections, paragraphs, and sentences of the *2018 International Building Code* are hereby amended as follows: Standard type is text from the IBC. Underlined type is text inserted. ~~Lined through type is deleted text from IBC.~~ A double asterisk (\*\*) at the beginning of a section identifies an amendment carried over from the 2015 edition of the code and a triple asterisk (\*\*\*) identifies a new or revised amendment with the 2018 code.

#### Explanation of Options A and B:

Please note that as there is a wide range in fire fighting philosophies / capabilities of cities across the region, OPTION “A” and OPTION “B” are provided in the Fire and Building Code amendments. Jurisdictions should choose one or the other based on their fire fighting philosophies / capabilities when adopting code amendments.

---

#### **\*\*Section 101.4; change to read as follows:**

**101.4 Referenced codes.** The other codes listed in Sections 101.4.1 through 101.4.8 and referenced elsewhere in this code, when specifically adopted, shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Whenever amendments have been adopted to the referenced codes and standards, each reference to said code and standard shall be considered to reference the amendments as well. Any reference to NFPA 70 or the Electrical Code shall mean the Electrical Code as adopted.

*(Reason: Legal wording to recognize locally adopted codes and amendments adopted with referenced codes. The former ICC Electrical Code is now Appendix K of this code but no longer called by that name.)*

---

#### **\*\*Section 101.4.8; add the following:**

---

**101.4.8 Electrical.** The provisions of the Electrical Code shall apply to the installation of electrical

systems, including alterations, repairs, replacement, equipment, appliances, fixtures, fittings and appurtenances thereto.

*(Reason: This was dropped when ICC quit publishing the ICC Electrical Code, but the Electrical Code still should be referenced regardless of how it is adopted.)*

**\*\* Section 103 and 103.1; amend to insert the Department Name**

## **~~DEPARTMENT OF BUILDING SAFETY II~~**

**103.1 Creation of enforcement agency.** ~~The Department of Building Safety~~ Building Inspections Division of the Town of Cross Roads is hereby created and the official in charge thereof shall be known as the *building official*.

**\*\*\*Section [A] 104.2.1 Determination of substantially improved or substantially damaged existing buildings and structures in flood hazard areas.** *(Jurisdictions may consider the option to amend or delete depending on local enforcement and flood hazard ordinances.)*

*(Reason: Flood hazard ordinances may be administered by other departments within the city.)*

**\*\*Section 104.10.1; Flood hazard areas.** *(Jurisdictions may consider the option to amend or delete depending on local enforcement and flood hazard ordinances.)*

*(Reason: Flood hazard ordinances may be administered by other departments within the city.)*

**\*\*Section 105.2 Work exempt from permit; under sub-title entitled "Building" delete items 1, 2, 10 and 11 and re-number as follows:**

### **Building:**

- ~~1. One-story detached accessory structures used as tool and storage sheds, playhouses and similar uses, provided the floor area does not exceed 120 square feet.~~
  - ~~2. Fences not over 7 feet (1829 mm) high.~~
  - ~~3. 1. (Remainder Unchanged)~~
  - ~~4. 2. (Remainder Unchanged)~~
  - ~~5. 3. (Remainder Unchanged)~~
  - ~~6. 4. (Remainder Unchanged)~~
  - ~~7. 5. (Remainder Unchanged)~~
  - ~~8. 6. (Remainder Unchanged)~~
  - ~~9. 7. (Remainder Unchanged)~~
  - ~~10. Shade cloth structures constructed for nursery or agricultural purposes, not including service systems.~~
  - ~~11. 8. (Remainder Unchanged)~~
  - ~~12. 9. (Remainder Unchanged)~~
- 
- ~~13. 10. (Remainder Unchanged)~~



*(Reason: Items deleted are for one- and two-family dwellings regulated by the International Residential Code. Accessory structures, fences and shade cloth structures would require a permit for commercial properties to ensure compliance with local ordinance, egress, accessibility, flame spread of fabric, wind/snow design load, etc.)*

**\*\*Section 109; add Section 109.7 to read as follows:**

**109.7 Re-inspection Fee.** A fee as established by city council resolution may be charged when:

1. The inspection called for is not ready when the inspector arrives;
2. No building address or permit card is clearly posted;
3. City approved plans are not on the job site available to the inspector;
4. The building is locked or work otherwise not available for inspection when called;
5. The job site is red-tagged twice for the same item;
6. The original red tag has been removed from the job site.
7. Failure to maintain erosion control, trash control or tree protection.

Any re-inspection fees assessed shall be paid before any Final/Group II inspections are scheduled on that job site.

*(Reason: This fee is not a fine or penalty but is designed to compensate for time and trips when inspections are called for when not ready.)*

**\*\*Section 109; add Section 109.8, 109.8.1, 109.8.2 and 109.9 to read as follows:**

**109.8 Work without a permit.**

**109.8.1 Investigation.** Whenever work for which a permit is required by this code has been commenced without first obtaining a permit, a special investigation shall be made before a permit may be issued for such work.

**109.8.2 Fee.** An investigation fee, in addition to the permit fee, shall be collected whether or not a permit is subsequently issued. The investigation fee shall be equal to the amount of the permit fee required by this code or the city fee schedule as applicable. The payment of such investigation fee shall not exempt the applicant from compliance with all other provisions of either this code or the technical codes nor from penalty prescribed by law.

**109.9 Unauthorized cover up fee.** Any work concealed without first obtaining the required inspection in violation of Section 110 shall be assessed a red tag fee as established by the city fee schedule.

*(Reason: This fee is not a fine or penalty but is designed to compensate for time and to remove incentive to attempt to evade permits and code compliance. Text taken from former Uniform Administrative Code.)*

**\*\*\*Section 110.3.5; Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel product inspection; Delete exception**

**~~Exception :~~** ~~Gypsum board and gypsum panel products that are not part of a fire resistance rated assembly or a shear assembly.~~

*(Reason: Lath or gypsum board inspections are not typically performed in this area.)*

**\*\*\*Section 202; amend definition of Ambulatory Care Facility as follows:**

**AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY.** Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical, surgical, psychiatric, nursing or similar care on a less than 24-hour basis to individuals who are rendered incapable of self-preservation by the services provided or staff has accepted responsibility for care recipients already incapable. This group may include but not be limited to the following:

- Dialysis centers
- Sedation dentistry
- Surgery centers
- Colonic centers
- Psychiatric centers

*(Reason: To clarify the range of uses included in the definition. [Explanatory note related to **Ambulatory Care Facilities**: This group of uses includes medical or dental offices where persons are put under for dental surgery or other services. Section 903.2.2 will now require such uses to be sprinklered if on other than the floor of exit discharge or if four or more persons are put under on the level of exit discharge. Recommend (1.) jurisdictions document any pre-existing non-conforming conditions prior to issuing a new C of O for a change of tenant and, (2.) On any medical or dental office specify on C of O the maximum number of persons permitted to be put under general anesthesia. It is recommended that before a Certificate of Occupancy is issued, a letter of intended use from the business owner shall be included and a C of O documenting the maximum number of care recipients incapable of self preservation allowed.)*

**\*\*Section 202; add definition of Assisting Living Facilities to read as follows.**

**ASSISTED LIVING FACILITIES.** A building or part thereof housing persons, on a 24-hour basis, who because of age, mental disability or other reasons, live in a supervised residential environment which provides personal care services. The occupants are capable of responding to an emergency situation without physical assistance from staff.

*(Reason: The code references Assisted Living facilities and definition was deleted.)*

**\*\*Section 202; change definition of "Atrium" as follows:**

**ATRIUM.** An opening connecting ~~two~~ three or more stories... {Balance remains unchanged}

*(Reason: Accepted practice in the region based on legacy codes. Section 1019 permits unenclosed two story stairways under certain circumstances.)*

**\*\*\*Section 202; ~~add~~ amend definition of "Repair Garage" as follows:**

**REPAIR GARAGE.** A building, structure or portion thereof used for servicing or repairing motor vehicles. This occupancy shall also include garages involved in minor repair, modification and servicing of motor vehicles for items such as lube changes, inspections, windshield repair or replacement, shocks, minor part replacement and other such minor repairs.

*(Reason: The code references aligns with fire code.)*

**\*\*Section 202; amend definition of SPECIAL INSPECTOR to read as follows:**

**SPECIAL INSPECTOR.** A qualified person employed or retained by an approved agency who shall prove to the satisfaction of the registered design professional in responsible charge and ~~approved by~~ the Building Official as having the competence necessary to inspect a particular type of construction requiring special inspection.

*(Reason: The registered design professional in responsible charge should be included.)*

**\*\*Section 202; amend definition to read as follows:**

**HIGH-RISE BUILDING.** A building with an occupied floor located more than ~~75~~ 55 feet (~~22 860 mm~~) (16 764 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

*(Reason: To define high-rise, as it influences sprinkler requirement thresholds based on the fire fighting capabilities of a jurisdiction.)*

**\*\*\*Section 303.1.3; add a sentence to read as follows:**

**303.1.3 Associated with Group E occupancies.** A room or space used for assembly purposes that is associated with a Group E occupancy is not considered a separate occupancy, Except when applying the assembly requirements of Chapters 10 and 11.

*(Reason: To clarify that egress and accessibility requirements are applicable for assembly areas, i.e. cafeteria, auditoriums, etc.)*

**\*\*Section 304.1; add the following to the list of occupancies:**

Fire stations

Police stations with detention facilities for 5 or less

*(Reason: Consistent with regional practice dating back to the legacy codes.)*

**\*\*Section 307.1.1; add the following sentence to Exception 4:**

4. Cleaning establishments... *{Text unchanged}* ...with Section 707 or 1-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 or both. See also IFC Chapter 21, Dry Cleaning Plant provisions.

*(Reason: To call attention to detailed requirements in the Fire Code.)*

**\*\*Section 403.1, Exception 3; change to read as follows:**

3. The open air portion of a building *[remainder unchanged]*

*(Reason: To clarify enclosed portions are not exempt.)*

**\*\*Section 403.3, Exception; delete item 2.**

*(Reason: To provide adequate fire protection to enclosed areas.)*

**\*\*Section 403.3.2; change to read as follows:**

**[F] 403.3.2 Water supply to required fire pumps.** In buildings that are more than 420 120 feet (36.5 m) in building height, required fire pumps shall be supplied by connections to no fewer than two water mains located in different streets. Separate supply piping shall be provided between each connection to the water main and the pumps. Each connection and the supply piping between the connection and the pumps shall be sized to supply the flow and pressure required for the pumps to operate.

**Exception:** {No change to exception.}

*(Reason: The 2009 edition of the IFC added this requirement based on a need for redundancy of the water supply similar to the redundancy of the power supply to the fire pumps required for such tall buildings, partially due to the fact that these buildings are rarely fully evacuated in a fire event. More commonly, the alarm activates on the floor of the event, the floor above and the floor below. Back-up power to the fire pump becomes critical for this reason. Certainly, the power is pointless if the water supply is impaired for any reason, so a similar requirement is provided here for redundant water supplies. The 2015 edition changed the requirement to only apply to very tall buildings over 420 ft. This amendment modifies/lowers the requirement to 120 ft., based on this same height requirement for fire service access elevators. Again, the language from the 2009 and 2012 editions of the code applied to any high-rise building. This compromise at 120 ft. is based on the above technical justification of defend-in-place scenarios in fire incidents in such tall structures.)*

**\*\*Section 404.5; delete Exception.**

*(Reason: Consistent with amended atrium definition.)*

**\*\*Section 406.3.3.1 Carport separation; add sentence to read as follows:**

A fire separation is not required between a Group R-2 and U carport provided that the carport is entirely open on all sides and that the distance between the two is at least 10 feet (3048 mm).

*(Reason: Simplifies the fire separation distance and eliminates the need to obtain opening information on existing buildings when adding carports in existing apartment complexes. Consistent with legacy codes in effect in region for years and no record of problems with car fires spreading to apartments as a result.)*

**Section 423 is hereby amended to read as follows:**

423.1 General. This section applies to the construction of storm shelters constructed as separate detached buildings or constructed as rooms or spaces within buildings for the purpose of providing protection from storms that produce high winds, such as tornadoes during the storm. Such structures shall be designed to be tornado shelters. Design of

facilities for use as emergency shelters after the storm are outside the scope of ICC 500 and shall comply with Table 1604.5 as a Risk Category IV Structure. 423.2 Construction. In addition to other applicable requirements in this code, storm shelters shall be constructed in accordance with ICC 500 for tornado shelters. The Town of Cross Roads is in the 250 mph wind speed area of Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500. Buildings or structures that are also designated as emergency shelters shall also comply with Table 1604.5 as Risk Category IV structures.

Exceptions:

1. Sanitation facilities per ICC 500 shall not be required.
2. Doors and shutters shall not be required to auto latch if all of the following are met:
  - a. The opening is not required to be auto latched by other requirements within this code.
  - b. The opening has adjacent signage complying with Section 703.5 Visual Characters of the 2012 Texas Accessibility Standards with text stating " In case of tornado, close this door" or similar text.
  - c. Doors shall comply with Section 503.3 of ICC 500

423.4 Group E occupancies. In areas where the shelter design wind speed for tornados, in accordance with Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500 is 250 MPH, all new buildings and gymnasium or cafeteria additions to existing buildigns for Group E occupancies with an aggregate occupant load ... { remainder unchanged)

**\*\*\*Table 506.2; delete sentence from table**

~~I. The maximum allowable area for a single-story non-sprinklered Group U greenhouse is permitted to be 9000 square feet or the allowable area shall be permitted to comply with Table C102.1 of Appendix C.~~

*(Reason: To eliminate the need for Appendix C adoption and remain consistent with 6000 sq. ft. sprinklering provision.)*

**\*\*Section 506.3.1; add sentence to read as follows:**

**506.3.1 Minimum percentage of perimeter.** [Existing Text remains]

In order to be considered as accessible, if not in direct contact with a street or fire lane, a minimum 10-foot wide pathway meeting fire department access from the street or approved fire lane shall be provided.

*(Reason: To define what is considered accessible. Consistent with regional amendment to IFC 504.1.)*

**\*\*\*Section 602.1.1; add sentence to read as follows:**

**602.1.1 Minimum Requirements.** [Existing Text to remain]

Where a building contains more than one distinct type of construction, the building shall comply with the most restrictive area, height, and stories, for the lesser type of construction or be separated by fire walls.

*(Reason: To create definite language that requires separation between dissimilar building types.)*

**\*\*\*Section 708.4.2; change sentence to read as follows:**

**708.4.2 Fireblocks and draftstops in combustible construction.** [Body of text unchanged]

**Exceptions:**

1. Buildings equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, or in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 provided that sprinkler protection is provided in the space between the top of the fire partition and the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above as required for systems complying with Section 903.3.1.1. Portions of buildings containing concealed spaces filled with noncombustible insulation as permitted for sprinkler omission shall not apply to this exception for draftstopping. [Remainder unchanged]

*Reason: (The most common exception used to eliminate the need for sprinklers in concealed spaces of combustible construction is to fill the space with noncombustible insulation. This exception was changed in 2010 to permit a 2-inch air gap at the top of the filled space. A space compliant with the permitted omission above would allow hot gas and smoke to spread unimpeded throughout a building not provided with draftstopping. For this reason, omission of sprinklers permitted in accordance with NFPA 13 referenced standard should not be permitted with IBC exception requiring draftstopping in combustible construction.)*

**\*\*\*Section 718.3; change sentence to read as follows:**

**718.3 Draftstopping in floors.** [Body of text unchanged]

**Exceptions:** Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. and provided that in combustible construction, sprinkler protection is provided in the floor space.

*(Reason: To remain consistent with changes in 708.4.2 code.)*

**\*\*\*Section 718.4; change sentence to read as follows:**

**718.4 Draftstopping in attics.** [Body of text unchanged]



**Exceptions:** Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and provided that in combustible construction, sprinkler protection is provided in the attic space.

*(Reason: To remain consistent with changes in 708.4.2 code.)*

**\*\*Section 901.6.1; add Section 901.6.1.1 to read as follows:**

**901.6.1.1 Standpipe Testing.** Building owners/managers must maintain and test standpipe systems as per NFPA 25 requirements. The following additional requirements shall be applied to the testing that is required every 5 years:

1. The piping between the Fire Department Connection (FDC) and the standpipe shall be backflushed or inspected by approved camera when foreign material is present or when caps are missing, and also hydrostatically tested for all FDC's on any type of standpipe system. Hydrostatic testing shall also be conducted in accordance with NFPA 25 requirements for the different types of standpipe systems.
2. For any manual (dry or wet) standpipe system not having an automatic water supply capable of flowing water through the standpipe, the tester shall connect hose from a fire hydrant or portable pumping system (as approved by the *fire code official*) to each FDC, and flow water through the standpipe system to the roof outlet to verify that each inlet connection functions properly. Confirm that there are no open hose valves prior to introducing water into a dry standpipe. There is no required pressure criteria at the outlet. Verify that check valves function properly and that there are no closed control valves on the system.
3. Any pressure relief, reducing, or control valves shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 25. All hose valves shall be exercised.
4. If the FDC is not already provided with approved caps, the contractor shall install such caps for all FDC's as required by the *fire code official*.
5. Upon successful completion of standpipe test, place a blue tag (as per Texas Administrative Code, Fire Sprinkler Rules for Inspection, Test and Maintenance Service (ITM) Tag) at the bottom of each standpipe riser in the building. The tag shall be check-marked as "Fifth Year" for Type of ITM, and the note on the back of the tag shall read "5 Year Standpipe Test" at a minimum.
6. The procedures required by Texas Administrative Code Fire Sprinkler Rules with regard to Yellow Tags and Red Tags or any deficiencies noted during the testing, including the required notification of the local Authority Having Jurisdiction (*fire code official*) shall be followed.
7. Additionally, records of the testing shall be maintained by the owner and contractor, if applicable, as required by the State Rules mentioned above and

---

NFPA 25.

8. Standpipe system tests where water will be flowed external to the building shall not be conducted during freezing conditions or during the day prior to expected night time freezing conditions.
9. Contact the *fire code official* for requests to remove existing fire hose from Class II and III standpipe systems where employees are not trained in the utilization of this firefighting equipment. All standpipe hose valves must remain in place and be provided with an approved cap and chain when approval is given to remove hose by the *fire code official*.

*(Reason: Increases the reliability of the fire protection system and re-emphasizes the requirements of NFPA 25 relative to standpipe systems, as well as ensuring that FDC connections are similarly tested/maintained to ensure operation in an emergency incident.)*

**\*\*Section 903.1.1; change to read as follows:**

**903.1.1 Alternative Protection.** Alternative automatic fire-extinguishing systems complying with Section 904 shall be permitted instead of in addition to automatic sprinkler protection where recognized by the applicable standard and, or as approved by the *fire code official*.

*(Reason: Such alternative systems do not provide the reliability of automatic sprinkler protection. Most gaseous type systems are highly susceptible to open doors, ceiling or floor tile removal, etc. However, an applicant could pursue an Alternate Method request to help mitigate the reliability issues with these alternative systems with the fire code official if so desired, or there may be circumstances in which the fire code official is acceptable to allowing an alternate system in lieu of sprinklers, such as kitchen hoods or paint booths.)*

**Section 903.1.1.3 Add Exempt Location**

**903.1.1.3** Automatic sprinkler protection shall not be required under attached or detached metal awnings, metal walkway covers or similar type structures if the entire cover and supporting structure is constructed of metal.

(Pending Fire approval to add to Fire Code)

**\*\*Section 903.2; add paragraph to read as follows and delete the exception:**

Automatic Sprinklers shall not be installed in elevator machine rooms, elevator machine spaces, and elevator hoistways, other than pits where such sprinklers would not necessitate shunt trip requirements under any circumstances. Storage shall not be allowed within the elevator machine room. Signage shall be provided at the entry doors to the elevator machine room indicating “ELEVATOR MACHINERY – NO STORAGE ALLOWED.”

*(Reason: Firefighter and public safety. This amendment eliminates the shunt trip requirement of the International Building Code Section 3005.5 for the purpose of*



elevator passenger and firefighter safety. This amendment is contingent on the Building Code amendment eliminating the Exceptions to Section 3005.4, such that passive fire barriers for these areas are maintained. The exception deletion is due to the fact that such telecom areas pose an undue fire risk to the structural integrity of the building.)

**\*\*Section 903.2.9; add Section 903.2.9.3 to read as follows:**

**903.2.9.3 Self-Service Storage Facility.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout all self-service storage facilities.

(Reason: Fire departments are unable to inspect these commercial occupancies and are unaware of the contents being stored. Previous allowance to separate units by fire barriers is difficult to enforce maintenance after opening.)

**\*\*Option A**

~~Section 903.2.11; change 903.2.11.3 and add 903.2.11.7 and 903.2.11.8, as follows:~~

~~**903.2.11.3 Buildings 55 Feet or more in Height.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings that have one or more stories with an occupant load of 30 or more, other than penthouses in compliance with Section 1510 of the *International Building Code*, located 55 feet (16 764 mm) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, measured to the finished floor.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Open parking structures in compliance with Section 406.5 of the *International Building Code*, having no other occupancies above the subject garage.~~

~~2. Occupancies in Group F-2.~~

~~**903.2.11.7 High Piled Combustible Storage.** For any building with a clear height exceeding 12 feet (4572 mm), see Chapter 32 to determine if those provisions apply.~~

~~**903.2.11.8 Spray Booths and Rooms.** New and existing spray booths and spraying rooms shall be protected by an approved automatic fire extinguishing system.~~

**\*\*Option B**

**Section 903.2.11; change 903.2.11.3 and add 903.2.11.7, 903.2.11.8, and 903.2.11.9 as follows:**

**903.2.11.3 Buildings 55 35 feet or more in height.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings that have one or more stories with an occupant load of 30 or more, other than penthouses in compliance with Section 1510 of the *International Building Code*, located 55 35 feet (46 764 10 668 mm) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, measured to the finished floor.

**Exceptions:**

1.—Open parking structures in compliance with Section 406.5 of the

International Building Code, having no other occupancies above the subject garage.

~~2. Occupancies in Group F-2.~~

**903.2.11.7 High-Piled Combustible Storage.** For any building with a clear height exceeding 12 feet (4572 mm), see Chapter 32 to determine if those provisions apply.

**903.2.11.8 Spray Booths and Rooms.** New and existing spray booths and spraying rooms shall be protected by an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system.

**903.2.11.9 Buildings Over 6,000 sq. ft.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout all buildings with a building area 6,000 sq. ft. or greater and in all existing buildings that are enlarged to be 6,000 sq. ft. or greater. For the purpose of this provision, fire walls shall not define separate buildings.

**Exception:**

1. Open parking garages in compliance with Section 406.5 of the International Building Code.
2. For Group E buildings commonly defined as public or private schools which do not provide on-site instruction or care for students under the age of 4, sprinklers will be required for all buildings exceeding 12,000 sq. ft.

(Pending Fire approval to add to Fire Code)

*(Reason: Provides jurisdictions options as to their desired level of sprinkler protection based on multiple factors including firefighting philosophies/capabilities.)*

**\*\*Section 903.3.1.1.1; change to read as follows:**

**903.3.1.1.1 Exempt Locations.** When approved by the fire code official, automatic sprinklers shall not be required in the following rooms or areas where such ...{text unchanged}... because it is damp, of fire-resistance-rated construction or contains electrical equipment.

1. Any room where the application of water, or flame and water, constitutes a serious life or fire hazard.
2. Any room or space where sprinklers are considered undesirable because of the nature of the contents, when approved by the fire code official.
3. Generator and transformer rooms, under the direct control of a public utility, separated from the remainder of the building by walls and floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.
4. ~~In rooms or areas that are of noncombustible construction with wholly noncombustible contents.~~
5. Fire service access ~~Elevator machine rooms, and machinery spaces, and hoistways,~~ other than pits where such sprinklers would not necessitate shunt trip requirements under any circumstances.
6. {Delete.}

*(Reason: Gives clarification. Exception 4 deleted to provide protection where fire risks are poorly addressed. Amendment 903.2 addresses Exception 5 above relative to the elimination of sprinkler protection in these areas to avoid the shunt trip requirement.)*

**\*\*\*Section 903.3.1.2.3; delete sections and replace as follows:**

**[F] Section 903.3.1.2.3 Attached Garages and Attics.** Sprinkler protection is required in attached garages, and in the following attic spaces:

1. [Remainder Unchanged]
2. [Remainder Unchanged]
3. Attic spaces of buildings that are two or more stories in height above grade plane or above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
4. Group R-4, Condition 2 occupancy attics not required by Item 1 or 3 to have sprinklers shall comply with one of the following:  
[Remainder Unchanged]

*(Reason: Attic protection is required due to issues with fire exposure via soffit vents, as well as firefighter safety. Several jurisdictions indicated experience with un-protected attic fires resulting in displacement of all building occupants. NFPA 13 provides for applicable attic sprinkler protection requirements, as well as exemptions to such, based on noncombustible construction, etc. Attached garages already require sprinklers via NFPA 13R – this amendment just re-emphasizes the requirement.)*

**\*\*Section 903.3.1.3; change to read as follows:**

**903.3.1.3 NFPA 13D Sprinkler Systems.** *Automatic sprinkler systems installed in one- and two-family dwellings; Group R-3; Group R-4, Condition 1; and townhouses shall be permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13D or in accordance with state law.*

*(Reason: To allow the use of the Plumbing section of the International Residential Code (IRC) and recognize current state stipulations in this regard.)*

**\*\*Section 903.3.1.4; add to read as follows:**

**[F] 903.3.1.4 Freeze protection.** Freeze protection systems for automatic fire sprinkler systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of the applicable referenced NFPA standard and this section.

**903.3.1.4.1 Attics.** Only dry-pipe, preaction, or listed antifreeze automatic fire sprinkler systems shall be allowed to protect attic spaces.

**Exception:** Wet-pipe fire sprinkler systems shall be allowed to protect non-ventilated attic spaces where:

1. The attic sprinklers are supplied by a separate floor control valve assembly to allow ease of draining the attic system without impairing sprinklers throughout the rest of the building, and
2. Adequate heat shall be provided for freeze protection as per the applicable referenced NFPA standard, and

3. The attic space is a part of the building's thermal, or heat, envelope, such that insulation is provided at the roof deck, rather than at the ceiling level.

**903.3.1.4.2 Heat trace/insulation.** Heat trace/insulation shall only be allowed where approved by the fire code official for small sections of large diameter water-filled pipe.

*(Reason: In the last few years, severe winters brought to light several issues with current practices for sprinklering attics, not the least of which was wet-pipe sprinklers in ventilated attics provided with space heaters, etc. for freeze protection of such piping. This practice is not acceptable for the protection of water-filled piping in a ventilated attic space as it does not provide a reliable means of maintaining the minimum 40 degrees required by NFPA, wastes energy, and presents a potential ignition source to the attic space. Listed antifreeze is specifically included because NFPA currently allows such even though there is no currently listed antifreeze at the time of development of these amendments. The intent of this amendment is to help reduce the large number of freeze breaks that have occurred in the past with water-filled wet-pipe sprinkler systems in the future, most specifically in attic spaces.)*

**\*\*Section 903.3.5; add a second paragraph to read as follows:**

Water supply as required for such systems shall be provided in conformance with the supply requirements of the respective standards; however, every water-based fire protection system shall be designed with a 10 psi safety factor. Reference Section 507.4 for additional design requirements.

*(Reason: To define uniform safety factor for the region.)*

**\*\*Section 903.4; add a second paragraph after the exceptions to read as follows:**

Sprinkler and standpipe system water-flow detectors shall be provided for each floor tap to the sprinkler system and shall cause an alarm upon detection of water flow for more than 45 seconds. All control valves in the sprinkler and standpipe systems except for fire department hose connection valves shall be electrically supervised to initiate a supervisory signal at the central station upon tampering.

*(Reason: To avoid significant water losses. Consistent with amendment to IFC 905.9.)*

**\*\*Section 903.4.2; add second paragraph to read as follows:**

The alarm device required on the exterior of the building shall be a weatherproof horn/strobe notification appliance with a minimum 75 candela strobe rating, installed as close as practicable to the fire department connection.

*(Reason: Fire department connections are not always located at the riser; this allows the fire department faster access.)*

---

**\*\*Section 905.2; change to read as follows:**

**905.2 Installation Standard.** Standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 14. Manual dry standpipe systems shall be supervised with a minimum of 10 psig and a maximum of 40 psig air pressure with a high/low alarm.

*(Reason: To define manual dry standpipe supervision requirements. Helps ensure the integrity of the standpipe system via supervision, such that open hose valves will result in a supervisory low air alarm.)*

\*\*\*Section 905.3; add Section 905.3.9 and exception to read as follows:

**905.3.9 Buildings Exceeding 10,000 sq. ft.** In buildings exceeding 10,000 square feet in area per story and where any portion of the building's interior area is more than 200 feet (60960 mm) of travel, vertically and horizontally, from the nearest point of fire department vehicle access, Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipes shall be provided.

**Exceptions:**

1. Automatic dry, semi-automatic dry, and manual dry standpipes are allowed as provided for in NFPA 14 where approved by the fire code official.
2. R-2 occupancies of four stories or less in height having no interior corridors.

*(Reason: Allows for the rapid deployment of hose lines to the body of the fire. Manual dry option added this edition.)*

\*\*Section 905.4, change Item 1, 3, and 5, and add Item 7 to read as follows:

1. In every required ~~interior~~ exit stairway, a hose connection shall be provided for each story above and below grade plane. Hose connections shall be located at the main floor landing between stories, unless otherwise approved by the fire code official.
2. {No change.}
3. In every exit passageway, at the entrance from the exit passageway to other areas of a building.

**Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to an exit passageway are reachable from an ~~interior~~ exit stairway hose connection by a {No change to rest.}

4. {No change.}
5. Where the roof has a slope less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33.3-percent slope), each standpipe shall be provided with a two-way a-hose connection shall be located to serve the roof or at the highest landing of an interior exit stairway with stair access to the roof provided in accordance with Section 1011.12.
6. {No change.}
7. When required by this Chapter, standpipe connections shall be placed adjacent to all required exits to the structure and at two hundred feet (200') intervals along major corridors thereafter, or as otherwise approved by the fire code official.

*(Reason: Item 1, 3, and 5 amendments to remove 'interior' will help to clarify that such connections are required for all 'exit' stairways, to ensure firefighter capabilities are not diminished in these tall buildings, simply because the stair is on the exterior of the building. Item 5 reduces the amount of pressure required to facilitate testing, and provides backup protection for fire fighter safety. Item 7 allows for the rapid deployment of hose lines to the body of the fire.)*

**\*\*Section 905.9; add a second paragraph after the exceptions to read as follows:**

Sprinkler and standpipe system water-flow detectors shall be provided for each floor tap to the sprinkler system and shall cause an alarm upon detection of water flow for more than 45 seconds. All control valves in the sprinkler and standpipe systems except for fire department hose connection valves shall be electrically supervised to initiate a supervisory signal at the central station upon tampering.

*(Reason: To avoid significant water losses. Consistent with amendment to IFC 903.4.)*

**\*\*Section 907.1; add Section 907.1.4 to read as follows:**

**907.1.4 Design Standards.** Where a new fire alarm system is installed, the devices shall be addressable. Fire alarm systems utilizing more than 20 smoke detectors shall have analog initiating devices.

*(Reason: Provides for the ability of descriptive identification of alarms, and reduces need for panel replacement in the future. Updated wording to match the language of the new requirement at 907.5.2.3. Change of terminology allows for reference back to definitions of NFPA 72.)*

**\*\*Section 907.2.1; change to read as follows:**

**907.2.1 Group A.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group A occupancies ~~where the having an occupant load due to the assembly occupancy is of 300 or more persons,~~ or where the Group A occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the *lowest level of exit discharge*. Group A occupancies not separated from one another in accordance with Section 707.3.10 of the *International Building Code* shall be considered as a single occupancy for the purposes of applying this section. Portions of Group E occupancies occupied for assembly purposes shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E occupancy.

**Exception:** {No change.}

Activation of fire alarm notification appliances shall:

1. Cause illumination of the *means of egress* with light of not less than 1 foot-candle (11 lux) at the walking surface level, and
2. Stop any conflicting or confusing sounds and visual distractions.



*(Reason: Increases the requirement to be consistent with Group B requirement. Also addresses issue found in Group A occupancies of reduced lighting levels and other A/V equipment that distracts from fire alarm notification devices or reduces ability of fire alarm system to notify occupants of the emergency condition.)*

**\*\*Section 907.2.3; change to read as follows:**

**907.2.3 Group E.** A manual fire alarm system that initiates the occupant notification signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm communication system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall be installed in Group E educational occupancies. When *automatic sprinkler systems* or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system. An approved smoke detection system shall be installed in Group E day care occupancies. Unless separated by a minimum of 100' open space, all buildings, whether portable buildings or the main building, will be considered one building for alarm occupant load consideration and interconnection of alarm systems.

**Exceptions:**

1. {No change.}
- 1.1. Residential In-Home day care with not more than 12 children may use interconnected single station detectors in all habitable rooms. (For care of more than five children 2 1/2 or less years of age, see Section 907.2.6.) {No change to remainder of exceptions.}

*(Reason: To distinguish educational from day care occupancy minimum protection requirements. Further, to define threshold at which portable buildings are considered a separate building for the purposes of alarm systems. Exceptions provide consistency with State law concerning such occupancies.)*

**\*\*Section 907.2.12, Exception 3; change to read as follows:**

3. Open air portions of buildings with an occupancy in Group A-5 in accordance with Section 303.1 of the *International Building Code*; however, this exception does not apply to accessory uses including but not limited to sky boxes, restaurants, and similarly enclosed areas.

*(Reason: To indicate that enclosed areas within open air seating type occupancies are not exempted from automatic fire alarm system requirements.)*

**\*\*Section 907.4.2; add Section 907.4.2.7 to read as follows:**

**907.4.2.7 Type.** Manual alarm initiating devices shall be an approved double action type.

*(Reason: Helps to reduce false alarms.)*

**\*\*Section 907.6.1; add Section 907.6.1.1 to read as follows:**

**907.6.1.1 Wiring Installation.** All fire alarm systems shall be installed in such a manner that a failure of any single initiating device or single open in an initiating circuit conductor will not interfere with the normal operation of other such devices. All signaling line circuits (SLC) shall be installed in such a way that a single open will not interfere with the operation of any addressable devices (Class A). Outgoing and return SLC conductors shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 72 requirements for Class A circuits and shall have a minimum of four feet separation horizontal and one foot vertical between supply and return circuit conductors. The initiating device circuit (IDC) from a signaling line circuit interface device may be wired Class B, provided the distance from the interface device to the initiating device is ten feet or less.

*(Reason: To provide uniformity in system specifications and guidance to design engineers. Improves reliability of fire alarm devices and systems.)*

**\*\*Section 907.6.3; delete all four Exceptions.**

*(Reason: To assist responding personnel in locating the emergency event for all fire alarm systems.)*

**\*\*Section 907.6.6; add sentence at end of paragraph to read as follows:**

See 907.6.3 for the required information transmitted to the supervising station.

*(Reason: To assist responding personnel in locating the emergency event for all fire alarm systems.)*

*(Reason: Deleted Previous code amendment Section 909.22, For removal because it is already in the code in Sections 909.20.5, 909.20.6, 909.20.6.1, 909.20.6.2, and 909.20.6.3.)*

**\*\*Section 910.2; change Exception 2 and 3 to read as follows:**

2. Only manual smoke and heat removal shall ~~not~~ be required in areas of buildings equipped with early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers. Automatic smoke and heat removal is prohibited.
3. Only manual smoke and heat removal shall ~~not~~ be required in areas of buildings equipped with control mode special application sprinklers with a response time index of  $50(m \cdot S)^{1/2}$  or less that are listed to control a fire in stored commodities with 12 or fewer sprinklers. Automatic smoke and heat removal is prohibited.

*(Reason: Allows the fire department to control the smoke and heat during and after a fire event, while still prohibiting such systems from being automatically activated, which is a potential detriment to the particular sprinkler systems indicated.)*

**\*\*Section 910.2; add subsections 910.2.3 with exceptions to read as follows:**

**910.2.3 Group H.** Buildings and portions thereof used as a Group H occupancy as follows:

1. In occupancies classified as Group H-2 or H-3, any of which are more than 15,000 square feet (1394 m<sup>2</sup>) in single floor area.



**Exception:** Buildings of noncombustible construction containing only noncombustible materials.

2. In areas of buildings in Group H used for storing Class 2, 3, and 4 liquid and solid oxidizers, Class 1 and unclassified detonable organic peroxides, Class 3 and 4 unstable (reactive) materials, or Class 2 or 3 water-reactive materials as required for a high-hazard commodity classification.

**Exception:** Buildings of noncombustible construction containing only noncombustible materials.

*(Reason: Maintains a fire protection device utilized in such occupancies where it is sometimes necessary to allow chemicals to burn out, rather than extinguish.)*

**\*\*Section 910.3; add section 910.3.4 to read as follows:**

**910.3.4 Vent Operation.** Smoke and heat vents shall be capable of being operated by approved automatic and manual means. Automatic operation of smoke and heat vents shall conform to the provisions of Sections 910.3.2.1 through 910.3.2.3.

**910.3.4.1 Sprinklered buildings.** Where installed in buildings equipped with an approved automatic sprinkler system, smoke and heat vents shall be designed to operate automatically.

The automatic operating mechanism of the smoke and heat vents shall operate at a temperature rating at least 100 degrees F (approximately 38 degrees Celsius) greater than the temperature rating of the sprinklers installed.

**Exception:** Manual only systems per Section 910.2.

**910.3.4.2 Nonsprinklered Buildings.** Where installed in buildings not equipped with an approved automatic sprinkler system, smoke and heat vents shall operate automatically by actuation of a heat-responsive device rated at between 100°F (56°C) and 220°F (122°C) above ambient.

**Exception:** Listed gravity-operated drop out vents.

*(Reason: Amendment continues to keep applicable wording from prior to the 2012 edition of the IFC. Specifically, automatic activation criteria is no longer specifically required in the published code. Specifying a temperature range at which smoke and heat vents should activate in sprinklered buildings helps to ensure that the sprinkler system has an opportunity to activate and control the fire prior to vent operation.)*

**\*\*Section 910.4.3.1; change to read as follows:**

**910.4.3.1 Makeup Air.** Makeup air openings shall be provided within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the floor level. Operation of makeup air openings shall be ~~manual or~~ automatic. The minimum gross area of makeup air inlets shall be 8 square feet per 1,000 cubic feet per minute (0.74 m<sup>2</sup> per 0.4719 m<sup>3</sup>/s) of smoke exhaust.

*(Reason: Makeup air has been required to be automatic for several years now in this region when mechanical smoke exhaust systems are proposed. This allows such systems to be activated from the smoke control panel by first responders without having*

*to physically go around the exterior of the building opening doors manually. Such requires a significant number of first responders on scene to conduct this operation and significantly delays activation and/or capability of the smoke exhaust system.)*

**~~\*\*Section 912.2; add Section 912.2.3 to read as follows:~~**

**912.2.3 Hydrant Distance.** An approved fire hydrant shall be located within 100 feet of the fire department connection as the fire hose lays along an unobstructed path.

*(Reason: To accommodate limited hose lengths, improve response times where the FDC is needed to achieve fire control, and improve ease of locating a fire hydrant in those situations also. Also, consistent with NFPA 14 criteria.)*

**~~\*\*\*Section 913.2.1; add Section 913.2.1.1 and exception to read as follows:~~**

**913.2.1.1 Fire Pump Room Access.** When located on the ground level at an exterior wall, the fire pump room shall be provided with an exterior fire department access door that is not less than 3 ft. in width and 6 ft. – 8 in. in height, regardless of any interior doors that are provided. A key box shall be provided at this door, as required by IFC Section 506.1.

**Exception:** When it is necessary to locate the fire pump room on other levels or not at an exterior wall, the corridor leading to the fire pump room access from the exterior of the building shall be provided with equivalent fire resistance as that required for the pump room, or as approved by the fire code official. Access keys shall be provided in the key box as required by IFC Section 506.1.

*(Reason: This requirement allows fire fighters safer access to the fire pump room. The requirement allows access without being required to enter the building and locate the fire pump room interior access door during a fire event. The exception recognizes that this will not always be a feasible design scenario for some buildings, and as such, provides an acceptable alternative to protect the pathway to the fire pump room.)*

**~~\*\*Section 1006.2.2.7; add Section 1006.2.2.7 as follows:~~**

**1006.2.2.7 Electrical Rooms.** For electrical rooms, special exiting requirements may apply. Reference the electrical code as adopted.

*(Reason: Cross reference necessary for coordination with the NEC which has exiting requirements as well.)*

**~~\*\*Section 1009.8; add the following Exception 7:~~**

**1009.8 Two Way Communication.** A two-way communication system complying with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2 shall be provided at the landing serving each elevator required to be accessible on each accessible floor that is one or more stories above or below the level of exit discharge.

**Exceptions:**

7. Buildings regulated under State Law and built in accordance with State registered plans, including variances or waivers granted by the State, shall be deemed to be in compliance with the requirements of Section 1009 and chapter 11.

*(Reason: To accommodate buildings regulated under Texas State Law and to be consistent with amendments in Chapter 11.)*

**\*\*Section 1010.1.9.5 Bolt Locks; amend exceptions 3 and 4 as follows:**

**Exceptions:**

3. Where a pair of doors serves an occupant load of less than 50 persons in a Group B, F, M or S occupancy. (Remainder unchanged)
4. Where a pair of doors serves a Group A, B, F, M or S occupancy (remainder unchanged)

*(Reason: Application to M occupancies reflects regional practice; No. 4 expanded to Group A due to it being a similar scenario to other uses; No. 4 was regional practice.)*

**\*\*Section 1020.1 Construction; add exception 6 to read as follows:**

6. In group B occupancies, corridor walls and ceilings need not be of fire-resistive construction within a single tenant space when the space is equipped with approved automatic smoke-detection within the corridor. The actuation of any detector must activate self-annunciating alarms audible in all areas within the corridor. Smoke detectors must be connected to an approved automatic fire alarm system where such system is provided.

*(Reason: Regionally accepted alternate method.)*

**\*\*Section 1029.1.1.1 Spaces under grandstands and bleachers; delete this section.**

*(Reason: Unenforceable.)*

**\*\*Section 1101.1 Scope; add exception to Section 1101.1 as follows:**

**Exception:** Components of projects regulated by and registered with Architectural Barriers Division of Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation shall be deemed to be in compliance with the requirements of this chapter.

*(Reason: To accommodate buildings regulated under state law. Further clarified in 2015 to mean components that are specifically addressed by TDLR shall be exempt.)*

**\*\*Section 2901.1; add a sentence to read as follows:**

**[P] 2901.1 Scope.** *{existing text to remain}* The provisions of this Chapter are meant to work in coordination with the provisions of Chapter 4 of the International Plumbing Code. Should any conflicts arise between the two chapters, the Building Official shall determine which provision applies.

*(Reason: Gives building official discretion.)*

**\*\*Section 2902.1; add a second paragraph to read as follows:**

In other than E Occupancies, the minimum number of fixtures in Table 2902.1 may be lowered, if requested in writing, by the applicant stating reasons for a reduced number and approved by the Building Official.

*(Reason: To allow flexibility for designer to consider specific occupancy needs.)*

**\*\*Table 2902.1; add footnote g to read as follows:**

g. Drinking fountains are not required in M Occupancies with an occupant load of 100 or less, B Occupancies with an occupant load of 25 or less, and for dining and/or drinking establishments.

*(Reason: Adjustment meets the needs of specific occupancy types.)*

**\*\*Add new Section 2902.1.4 to read as follows:**

**2902.1.4 Additional fixtures for food preparation facilities.** In addition to the fixtures required in this Chapter, all food service facilities shall be provided with additional fixtures set out in this section.

**2902.1.4.1 Hand washing lavatory.** At least one hand washing lavatory shall be provided for use by employees that is accessible from food preparation, food dispensing and ware washing areas. Additional hand washing lavatories may be required based on convenience of use by employees.

**2902.1.4.2 Service sink.** In new or remodeled food service establishments, at least one service sink or one floor sink shall be provided so that it is conveniently located for the cleaning of mops or similar wet floor cleaning tool and for the disposal of mop water and similar liquid waste. The location of the service sink(s) and/or mop sink(s) shall be approved by the Cross Roads health department.

*(Reason: Coordinates Health law requirements with code language for consistent regional practice.)*

**\*\*\*Section 3001.2 Emergency Elevator Communication Systems for the deaf, hard of hearing and speech impaired; delete this section.**

*(Reason: Per Elevator manufacturers input, they were not consulted prior to code approval and technology of elevator provisions as submitted are not currently available to provide this feature.)*

**\*\*\*Section 3002.1 Hoistway Enclosure Protection required. Add exceptions to Section 3002.1 as follows:**

**Exceptions:**

4. Elevators completely located within atriums shall not require hoistway enclosure protection.
5. Elevators in open or enclosed parking garages that serve only the parking garage, shall not require hoistway enclosure protection.

*(Reason: Provides specific Code recognition that elevators within atriums and within parking garages do not require hoistway enclosure protection. Amendment needed since specific Code language does not currently exist.)*

**\*\*Section 3005.4 Machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces; delete text as follows:**

~~Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, control spaces and machinery spaces outside of but attached to a hoistway that have openings into the hoistway shall be enclosed with fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.~~

**Revise text to read:**

Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, control spaces and machinery spaces shall be enclosed with fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

(Remainder unchanged)

*(Reason: This amendment eliminates code language to be consistent with the regional goal to require passive enclosures of these areas unless a hoistway enclosure is not required by other Code provisions. See companion change to eliminate fire sprinklers thereby eliminating shunt trip.)*

**\*\*\*Section 3005.4 Machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces;**

**Delete exceptions and add two new exceptions to Section 3005.4 as follows:**

**Exceptions:**

1. Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces completely located within atriums shall not require enclosure protection.
2. Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces in open or enclosed parking garages that serve only the parking garage, shall not

---

require enclosure protection.

*(Reason: This amendment eliminates the Exceptions to Section 3005.4 such that passive enclosures for these areas are to be provided and maintained. The fire rating of these enclosures is permitted to be omitted by the above added exceptions where allowed by other provisions of the code such as in atriums and parking structures. See companion change to eliminate fire sprinklers to eliminate the need for shunt trip system.)*

**\*\*Section 3005.7 add a Section 3005.7 as follows:**

**3005.7 Fire Protection in Machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces.**

**3005.7.1 Automatic sprinkler system.** The building shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, except as otherwise permitted by Section 903.3.1.1.1 and as prohibited by Section 3005.7.2.1.

**3005.7.2.1 Prohibited locations.** Automatic sprinklers shall not be installed in machine rooms, elevator machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and elevator hoistways.

**3005.7.2.2 Sprinkler system monitoring.** The sprinkler system shall have a sprinkler control valve supervisory switch and water-flow initiating device provided for each floor that is monitored by the building's fire alarm system.

**3005.7.3 Water protection.** An approved method to prevent water from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure from the operation of the automatic sprinkler system outside the elevator lobby shall be provided.

**3005.7.4 Shunt trip.** Means for elevator shutdown in accordance with Section 3005.5 shall not be installed.

*(Reason: Firefighter and public safety. This amendment eliminates the shunt trip requirement of the International Building Code Section 3005.5 for the purpose of elevator passenger and firefighter safety. The new section above is intended to be identical to Sections 3007.2, 3007.3, and 3007.4 for Fire Service Access Elevators and Sections 3008.2, 3008.3 and 3008.4 for Occupant Evacuation Elevators.)*

**\*\*Section 3005.8; add Section 3005.8 as follows:**

**3005.8 Storage.** Storage shall not be allowed within the elevator machine room, control room, machinery spaces and or control spaces. Provide approved signage at each entry to the above listed locations stating: "No Storage Allowed."

*(Reason: Reinforces the need to maintain space clean and free of combustibles. See companion change to eliminate fire sprinklers therein, to always require an enclosure - with IBC 3005.4 exceptions deleted - resulting in the limited need for a shunt trip system.)*

**Option A**

**~~Section 3006.2, Hoistway opening protection required;~~** Revise text as follows:

~~5. The building is a high rise and the elevator hoistway is more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) in height. The height of the hoistway shall be measured from the lowest floor at or above grade to the highest floors served by the hoistway."~~

**Option B**

**Section 3006.2, Hoistway opening protection required;** Revise text as follows:

5. The building is a high rise and the elevator hoistway is more than ~~75 feet (22 860 mm)~~ 55 feet (16 764 mm) in height. The height of the hoistway shall be measured from the lowest floor at or above grade to the highest floors served by the hoistway."

*(Reason: 2018 IBC text does not address hoistways that are greater than 75'-0" in height that are both below grade and above grade but not located above the high rise classification nor does the IBC address hoistways wholly located above grade such as those that serve sky lobbies".)*

**End**

END



**Recommended Amendments to the  
2018 International Residential Code**  
North Central Texas Council of Governments Region

The following sections, paragraphs, and sentences of the *2018 International Residential Code* are hereby amended as follows: Standard type is text from the IRC. Underlined type is text inserted. ~~Lined through type is deleted text from IRC.~~ A double asterisk at the beginning of a section identifies an amendment carried over from the 2015 edition of the code and a triple asterisk identifies a new or revised amendment with the 2018 code.

In 2009, **the State Legislature enacted SB 1410 prohibiting cities from enacting fire sprinkler mandates in residential dwellings.** However, jurisdictions with ordinances that required sprinklers for residential dwellings prior to and enforced before January 1, 2009, may remain in place. Reference; Section R313 Automatic Fire Sprinkler Systems.

The energy provisions in IRC Chapter 11 is deleted in its entirety.

**Reference the 2018 IECC for energy code provisions and recommended amendments.**

**\*\*Section R102.4; change to read as follows:**

**R102.4 Referenced codes and standards.** The *codes*, when specifically adopted, and standards referenced in this *code* shall be considered part of the requirements of this *code* to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections R102.4.1 and R102.4.2. Whenever amendments have been adopted to the referenced *codes* and standards, each reference to said *code* and standard shall be considered to reference the amendments as well. Any reference made to NFPA 70 or the *Electrical Code* shall mean the *Electrical Code* as adopted.

*(Reason: Legal wording to recognize locally adopted codes and amendments adopted with referenced codes.)*

**\*\* Section R103 and R103.1 amend to insert the Department Name**

~~**DEPARTMENT OF BUILDING SAFETY**~~ Town of Cross Roads Building Department

**R103.1 Creation of enforcement agency.** ~~The Department of Building Safety~~ Town of Cross Roads Building Department is hereby created and the official in charge thereof shall be known as the *building official*.

*(Reason: Reminder to be sure ordinance reads the same as designated by the city.)*

**\*\*Section R104.10.1 Flood Hazard areas; delete this section.**

*(Reason: Flood hazard ordinances may be administered by other departments within the city.)*

**\*\*Section R105.2 Amend as follows**



**Building:**

1. One-story detached accessory structures used as tool and storage sheds, playhouses and similar uses, provided the floor area does not exceed 420 400 square feet.

2. Fences.

(Remainder Unchanged)

**\*\*Section R105.3.1.1& R106.1.4; delete these sections.**

*(Reason: Floodplain provisions are addressed locally.)*

**\*\*Section R110 (R110.1 through R110.5); delete the section.**

*(Reason: Issuing CO's for residences is not a common practice in the area.)*

**\*\*Section R202; change definition of "Townhouse" to read as follows:**

**TOWNHOUSE.** A single-family dwelling unit constructed in a group of three or more attached units separated by property lines in which each unit extends from foundation to roof and with a yard or public way on at least two sides.

*(Reason: To distinguish Townhouses on separate lots.)*

**\*\*\*Table R301.2 (1); fill in as follows:**

GROUND SNOW LOAD	WIND DESIGN				SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY <sup>f</sup>	SUBJECT TO DAMAGE FROM			WINTER DESIGN TEMP <sup>e</sup>	ICE BARRIER UNDER- LAYMENT <sup>h</sup>	FLOOD HAZARDS <sup>g</sup>	AIR FREEZING INDEX <sup>i</sup>	MEAN ANNUAL TEMP <sup>j</sup>
	SPEED <sup>d</sup> (MPH)	Topographic Effects <sup>k</sup>	Special Wind Region <sup>L</sup>	Windborne Debris Zone <sup>m</sup>		Weathering <sup>a</sup>	Frost Line Depth <sup>b</sup>	Termite <sup>c</sup>					
5 lb/ft	115 (3 sec- gust)/ 76 fastest mile	No	No	No	A	Moderate	6"	Very Heavy	22 <sup>o</sup> F	No	Loc al Cod e	150	64.9 <sup>o</sup> F

**Delete remainder of table Manual J Design Criteria and footnote N**

*(Reason: To promote regional uniformity. Manual J is utilized by third party and not part of performed plan reviews. This is reference table only, not needed.)*

**\*\*Section R302.1; add exception #6 to read as follows:**

**Exceptions:** {previous exceptions unchanged}

6. Open non-combustible carport structures may be constructed when also approved within adopted ordinances.

*(Reason: Refers to other ordinances, such as zoning ordinances.)*

**\*\*Section R302.3; add Exception #3 to read as follows:**

**Exceptions:**

1. {existing text unchanged}
2. {existing text unchanged}
3. Two-family dwelling units that are also divided by a property line through the structure shall be separated as required for townhouses.

*(Reason: Provide guidance for a common construction method in this area. Correlates with amendment to IRC Section R202 Townhouse definition.)*

**\*\*Section R302.5.1; change to read as follows:**

**R302.5.1 Opening protection.** Openings from a private garage directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted. Other openings between the garage and residence shall be equipped with solid wood doors not less than 13/8 inches (35 mm) in thickness, solid or honeycomb core steel doors not less than 13/8 inches (35 mm) thick, or 20-minute fire-rated doors. ~~Equipped with a self-closing or automatic closing device.~~

*(Reason: Absence of data linking self-closing devices to increased safety. Self-closing devices often fail to close the door entirely.)*

**\*\*Section R303.3, Exception; amend to read as follows:**

**Exception:** {existing text unchanged} Spaces containing only a water closet or water closet and a lavatory may be ventilated with an approved mechanical recirculating fan or similar device designed to remove odors from the air.

*(Reason: Consistent with common local practice as recirculating fans are recognized as acceptable air movement.)*

**\*\*Section R313.2 One and Two Family Dwellings; Delete this section and subsection in their entirety.**

*(Reason: In 2009, the State Legislature enacted SB 1410, amending section 1301.551 subsection I of the occupation code, prohibiting cities from enacting fire sprinkler mandates one or two family dwellings only. However, jurisdictions with ordinances that required sprinklers for one or two family dwellings prior to and enforced before January 1, 2009, may remain in place.)*

**\*\*\*Section R315.2.2 Alterations, repairs and additions; amend to read as follows:**

---

**Exception:**

1. [existing text remains]
2. Installation, alteration or repairs of all electrically powered mechanical systems or plumbing appliances.

(Reason: Revised exception for clarity. Code intent is to protect against the products of combustion.)

**\*\*Section R322 Flood Resistant Construction; deleted section.**

(Reason: Floodplain hazard ordinances may be administered by other departments within the city.)

**\*\*Section R401.2; amended by adding a new paragraph following the existing paragraph to read as follows.**

**Section R401.2. Requirements.** {existing text unchanged} ...

Every foundation and/or footing, or any size addition to an existing post-tension foundation, regulated by this code shall be designed and sealed by a Texas-registered engineer.

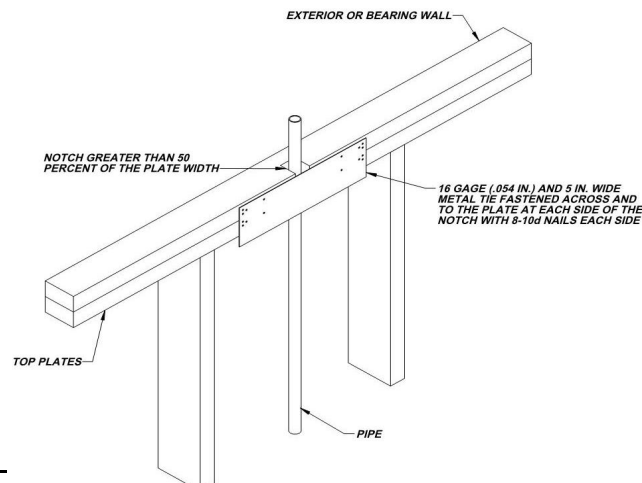
(Amendment to 2015 IRC carried forward to 2018 IRC.)

**\*\*Section R602.6.1; amend the following:**

**R602.6.1 Drilling and notching of top plate.** When piping or ductwork is placed in or partly in an exterior wall or interior load-bearing wall, necessitating cutting, drilling or notching of the top plate by more than 50 percent of its width, a galvanized metal tie not less than 0.054 inch thick (1.37 mm) (16 Ga) and 1 ½ inches (38) mm 5 inches (127 mm) wide shall be fastened across and to the plate at each side of the opening with not less than eight 10d (0.148 inch diameter) having a minimum length of 1 ½ inches (38 mm) at each side or equivalent. Fasteners will be offset to prevent splitting of the top plate material. The metal tie must extend a minimum of 6 inches past the opening. See figure R602.6.1. {remainder unchanged}

(Amendment to 2015 IRC carried forward to 2018 IRC.)

**\*\*Figure R602.6.1; delete the figure and insert the following figure:**



*(Amendment to 2015 IRC carried forward to 2018 IRC also provides additional assurance of maintaining the integrity of the framing by spreading the nailing pattern.)*

**\*\*\*Add section R703.8.4.1.2 Veneer Ties for Wall Studs; to read as follows:**

**R703.8.4.1.2 Veneer Ties for Wall Studs.** In stud framed exterior walls, all ties may be anchored to studs as follows:

1. When studs are 16 in (407 mm) o.c., stud ties shall be spaced no further apart than 24 in (737 mm) vertically starting approximately 12 in (381 mm) from the foundation; or
2. When studs are 24 in (610 mm) o.c., stud ties shall be spaced no further apart than 16 in (483 mm) vertically starting approximately 8 in (254 mm) from the foundation.

*(This amendment had been a carry over amendment for years to provide clear instruction for placement of brick ties. It is now retained with changes to reflect its correct placement and use for clarity when attachment to framing lumber (studs). It should remain for those purposes. It is in addition to the new new Table in 2018 which provides for brick ties directly to sheathing.)*

**\*\*Section R902.1; amend and add exception #5 to read as follows:**

**R902.1 Roofing covering materials.** Roofs shall be covered with materials as set forth in Sections R904 and R905. Class A, B, or C roofing shall be installed ~~in designated by law as requiring their use or when the edge of the roof is less than 3 feet from a lot line.~~  
{remainder unchanged}

**Exceptions:**

1. {text unchanged}
2. {text unchanged}
3. {text unchanged}
4. {text unchanged}
5. Non-classified roof coverings shall be permitted on one-story detached accessory structures used as tool and storage sheds, playhouses and similar uses, provided the floor area does not exceed (area defined by jurisdiction).

*(Reason: to address accessory structures Group U exempt from permits per Section R105.2)*

**\*\*\* Chapter 11 [RE] – Energy Efficiency is deleted in its entirety; Reference the 2015 IECC for energy code provisions and recommended amendments.**

(Reason: The recommended energy code changes from the Energy and Green Advisory Board update the amendments for Chapter 11. The 2015 International Energy Conservation Code should be referenced for residential energy provisions. This approach simply minimizes the number of amendments to the IRC.)

\*\*\*Section M1305.1.2; change to read as follows:

**M1305.1.2 Appliances in attics.** Attics containing appliances shall be provided . . . {bulk of paragraph unchanged} . . . side of the appliance. The clear access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest appliance. As a minimum, for access to the attic space, provide one of the following:

1. A permanent stair.
2. A pull down stair with a minimum 300 lb (136 kg) capacity.
3. An access door from an upper floor level.

**Exceptions:**

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the appliance can be serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is unobstructed...{remaining text unchanged}

(Reason: To provide a safe means of accessibility to appliances in attics and to allow for different types of construction limitations. Consistent with regional amendment to IFGC and IMC 306.3.)

\*\*Section M1411.3; change to read as follows:

**M1411.3 Condensate disposal.** Condensate from all cooling coils or evaporators shall be conveyed from the drain pan outlet to ~~an approved place of disposal~~ a sanitary sewer through a trap, by means of a direct or indirect drain. {remaining text unchanged}

(Reason: Reflects regional practice and to reduce excessive runoff into storm drains.)

\*\*Section M1411.3.1, Items 3 and 4; add text to read as follows:

**M1411.3.1 Auxiliary and secondary drain systems.** {bulk of paragraph unchanged}

1. {text unchanged}
2. {text unchanged}
3. An auxiliary drain pan... {bulk of text unchanged}... with Item 1 of this section. A water level detection device may be installed only with prior approval of the building official.
4. A water level detection device... {bulk of text unchanged}... overflow rim of such pan. A water level detection device may be installed only with prior approval of the building official.

*(Reason: Reflects standard practice in this area.)*

**\*\*Section M1411.3.1.1; add text to read as follows:**

**M1411.3.1.1 Water-level monitoring devices.** On down-flow units ...*{bulk of text unchanged}*... installed in the drain line. A water level detection device may be installed only with prior approval of the building official.

*(Reason: Reflects standard practice in this area.)*

**\*\*\*M1503.6 Makeup Air Required; amend and add exception as follows:**

**M1503.6 Makeup air required.** Where one or more gas, liquid or solid fuel-burning appliance that is neither direct-vent nor uses a mechanical draft venting system is located within a dwelling unit's air barrier, each exhaust system capable of exhausting in excess of 400 cubic feet per minute (0.19 m<sup>3</sup>/s) shall be mechanically or passively provided with makeup air at a rate approximately ~~equal~~ to the difference between exhaust air rate and 400 cubic feet per minute. Such makeup air systems shall be equipped with not fewer than one damper complying with Section M1503.6.2.

**Exception:** Makeup air is not required for exhaust systems installed for the exclusive purpose of space cooling and intended to be operated only when windows or other air inlets are open. Where all appliances in the house are of sealed combustion, power-vent, unvented, or electric, the exhaust hood system shall be permitted to exhaust up to 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m<sup>3</sup>/s) without providing makeup air. Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting in excess of 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m<sup>3</sup>/s) shall be provided with a makeup air at a rate approximately to the difference between the exhaust air rate and 600 cubic feet per minute.

*(Reason: Exception requires makeup air equaling the amount above and beyond 400 cfm for larger fan which will address concerns related to "fresh" air from the outdoors in hot humid climates creating a burden on HVAC equipment and negative efficiency impacts from back-drafting and wasted energy.)*

**\*\*Section M2005.2; change to read as follows:**

**M2005.2 Prohibited locations.** Fuel-fired water heaters shall not be installed in a room used as a storage closet. Water heaters located in a bedroom or bathroom shall be installed in a sealed enclosure so that *combustion air* will not be taken from the living space. Access to such enclosure may be from the bedroom or bathroom when through a solid door, weather-stripped in accordance with the exterior door air leakage requirements of the International Energy Conservation Code and equipped with an approved self-closing device. Installation of direct-vent water heaters within an enclosure is not required.

*(Reason: Corresponds with the provisions of IFGC Section 303.3, exception #5.)*

**\*\*Section G2408.3 (305.5) Private Garages; delete this section in its entirety.**

*(Reason: This provision does not reflect standard practice in this area.)*

**\*\*Section G2415.2.1 (404.2.1) CSST; add a second paragraph to read as follows:**

Both ends of each section of medium pressure gas piping shall identify its operating gas

pressure with an approved tag. The tags are to be composed of aluminum or stainless steel and the following wording shall be stamped into the tag:

"WARNING: 1/2 to 5 psi gas pressure - Do Not Remove"

*(Reason: To protect homeowners and plumbers.)*

\*\*\*Section G2415.12 (404.12) and G2415.12.1 (404.12.1); change to read as follows:

**G2415.12 (404.12) Minimum burial depth.** Underground *piping* systems shall be installed a minimum depth of ~~12 inches (305 mm)~~ 18 inches (457 mm) below grade, ~~except as provided for in Section G2415.12.1.~~

**G2415.12.1 (404.12.1) Individual Outdoor Appliances; Delete in its entirety**

*(Reason: To provide increased protection to piping systems.)*

\*\*Section G2417.1 (406.1); change to read as follows:

**G2417.1 (406.1) General.** Prior to acceptance and initial operation, all *piping* installations shall be inspected and *pressure tested* to determine that the materials, design, fabrication, and installation practices comply with the requirements of this code. The permit holder shall make the applicable tests prescribed in Sections 2417.1.1 through 2417.1.5 to determine compliance with the provisions of this code. The permit holder shall give reasonable advance notice to the building official when the piping system is ready for testing. The equipment, material, power and labor necessary for the inspections and test shall be furnished by the permit holder and the permit holder shall be responsible for determining that the work will withstand the test pressure prescribed in the following tests.

*(Reason: To utilize language used in the IPC regarding who is responsible for testing procedures.)*

\*\*Section G2417.4; change to read as follows:

**G2417.4 (406.4) Test pressure measurement.** Test pressure shall be measured with a monometer or with a pressure-measuring device designed and calibrated to read, record, or indicate a pressure loss caused by leakage during the pressure test period. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the pressure tests are made. ~~Mechanical gauges used to measure test pressures shall have a range such that the highest end of the scale is not greater than five times the test pressure.~~

*(Reason: To require the use of more accurate diaphragm gauges. Spring gauges do not provide accurate measurement below approximately 17 psig.)*

\*\*Section G2417.4.1; change to read as follows:

**G2417.4.1 (406.4.1) Test pressure.** The test pressure to be used shall be no less than 3 psig (20 kPa gauge), or at the discretion of the Code Official, the piping and valves may be tested at a pressure of at least six (6) inches (152 mm) of mercury, measured with a manometer or slope gauge, irrespective of design pressure. Where the test pressure exceeds 125 psig (862 kPa gauge), the test pressure shall not exceed a value that produces a hoop stress in the piping greater than 50 percent of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe. For tests requiring a pressure of 3 psig, diaphragm gauges shall utilize a dial with a minimum diameter of three and one half inches (3 1/2"), a set hand, 1/10 pound incrementation and pressure range not to exceed 6 psi for tests requiring a pressure of 3 psig. For tests requiring a pressure of 10 psig, diaphragm gauges shall utilize a dial with a minimum diameter of three

and one-half inches (3 1/2"), a set hand, a minimum of 2/10 pound incrementation and a pressure range



not to exceed 20 psi. For welded piping, and for piping carrying gas at pressures in excess of fourteen (14) inches water column pressure (3.48 kPa) (1/2 psi) and less than 200 inches of water column pressure (52.2 kPa) (7.5 psi), the test pressure shall not be less than ten (10) pounds per square inch (69.6 kPa). For piping carrying gas at a pressure that exceeds 200 inches of water column (52.2 kPa) (7.5 psi), the test pressure shall be not less than one and one-half times the proposed maximum working pressure.

Diaphragm gauges used for testing must display a current calibration and be in good working condition. The appropriate test must be applied to the diaphragm gauge used for testing

*(Reason: To provide for lesser pressures to coordinate with the use of more accurate diaphragm gauges.)*

**\*\*Section G2417.4.2; change to read as follows:**

**G2417.4.2 (406.4.2) Test duration.** The test duration shall be held for a length of time satisfactory to the Building Official, but in no case for be not less than 10-fifteen (15) minutes. For welded piping, and for piping carrying gas at pressures in excess of fourteen (14) inches water column pressure (3.48 kPa), the test duration shall be held for a length of time satisfactory to the Building Official, but in no case for less than thirty (30) minutes.

*(Reason: To comply with accepted regional practices.)*

**\*\*Section G2420.1 (406.1); add Section G2420.1.4 to read as follows:**

**G2420.1.4 Valves in CSST installations.** Shutoff valves installed with corrugated stainless steel (CSST) piping systems shall be supported with an approved termination fitting, or equivalent support, suitable for the size of the valves, of adequate strength and quality, and located at intervals so as to prevent or damp out excessive vibration but in no case greater than 12-inches from the center of the valve. Supports shall be installed so as not to interfere with the free expansion and contraction of the system's piping, fittings, and valves between anchors. All valves and supports shall be designed and installed so they will not be disengaged by movement of the supporting piping.

*(Reason: To provide proper security to CSST valves. These standards were established in this region in 1999 when CSST was an emerging technology.)*

**\*\*Section G2420.5.1 (409.5.1); add text to read as follows:**

**G2420.5.1 (409.5.1) Located within the same room.** The shutoff valve...{bulk of paragraph unchanged}... in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. A secondary shutoff valve must be installed within 3 feet (914 mm) of the firebox if appliance shutoff is located in the firebox.

*(Reason: Reflects regional practice and provides an additional measure of safety.)*

**\*\*Section G2421.1 (410.1); add text and Exception to read as follows:**

**G2421.1 (410.1) Pressure regulators.** A line pressure regulator shall be ... {bulk of paragraph unchanged}... approved for outdoor installation. Access to regulators shall comply with the requirements for access to appliances as specified in Section M1305.



**Exception:** A passageway or level service space is not required when the *regulator* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required *attic* opening.

(Reason: To require adequate access to regulators.)

**\*\*Section G2422.1.2.3 (411.1.3.3) Prohibited locations and penetrations; delete Exception 1 and Exception 4.**

(Reason: To comply with accepted regional practices.)

**\*\*Section G2445.2 (621.2); add Exception to read as follows:**

**G2445.2 (621.2) Prohibited use.** One or more *unvented room heaters* shall not be used as the sole source of comfort heating in a *dwelling unit*.

**Exception:** Existing *approved unvented room heaters* may continue to be used in *dwelling units*, in accordance with the code provisions in effect when installed, when *approved by the Building Official* unless an unsafe condition is determined to exist as described in *International Fuel Gas Code* Section 108.7 of the Fuel Gas Code.

(Reason: Gives code official discretion.)

**\*\*Section G2448.1.1 (624.1.1); change to read as follows:**

**G2448.1.1 (624.1.1) Installation requirements.** The requirements for *water heaters* relative to access, sizing, *relief valves*, drain pans and scald protection shall be in accordance with this code.

(Reason: To clarify installation requirements. Also corresponds with amendments regarding water heater access.)

**\*\*\*Section P2603; add to read as follows:**

**P2603.3 Protection against corrosion.** Metallic piping, except for cast iron, ductile iron and galvanized steel, shall not be placed in direct contact with steel framing members, concrete or cinder walls and floors or other masonry. Metallic piping shall not be placed in direct contact with corrosive soil. Where sheathing is used to prevent direct contact, the sheathing shall have a thickness of not less than 0.008 inch (8 mil) (0.203 mm) and the sheathing shall be made of approved material plastic. Where sheathing protects piping that penetrates concrete or masonry walls or floors, the sheathing shall be installed in a manner that allows movement of the piping within the sheathing.

(Reason: Allows for other materials to be accepted )

**\*\*\*Section P2603.5.1 Sewer Depth; change to read as follows:**

**P2603.5.1 Sewer depth.** Building sewers that connect to private sewage disposal systems shall be a minimum of [number] inches (mm) below finished grade at the point

of septic tank connection. Building sewers shall be a minimum of 12 inches (304 mm) below grade.

*(Reason: Provides sewer depth that is common in this region. Deleted reference to private sewage disposal because a private sewage disposal code is not typically adopted in this region.)*

**\*\*\*Section P2604; add to read as follows:**

**P2604.2.1 Plastic sewer and DWV piping installation.** Plastic sewer and DWV piping installed underground shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Trench width shall be controlled to not exceed the outside the pipe diameter plus 16 inches or in a trench which has a controlled width equal to the nominal diameter of the piping multiplied by 1.25 plus 12 inches. The piping shall be bedded in 4 inches of granular fill and then backfilled compacting the side fill in 6-inch layers on each side of the piping. The compaction shall be to minimum of 85 percent standard proctor density and extend to a minimum of 6 inches above the top of the pipe.

*(Reason: To follow manufacturer backfill requirements and to be clear to Inspectors out in the field.)*

**\*\*\* Section P2801; change to read as follows:**

#### **P2801.6 Required pan.**

Where a storage tank-type water heater or a hot water storage tank is installed in a location where water leakage from the tank will cause damage, the tank shall be installed in a pan constructed of one of the following:

1. Galvanized steel or aluminum of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) in thickness.
2. Plastic not less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) in thickness.
3. Other *approved* materials.

~~A plastic pan beneath a gas-fired water heater shall be constructed of material having a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.~~

*(Reason: Plastic burns degrading material over time on gas fired water heaters and to maintaining protection level )*

**\*\*Section P2801.6.1; change to read as follows:**

**Section P2801.6.1 Pan size and drain.** The pan shall be not less than 11/2 inches (38 mm) in depth and shall be of sufficient size and shape to receive all dripping or condensate from the tank or water heater. The pan shall be drained by an indirect waste pipe having a diameter of not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm). Piping for safety pan drains shall be of those materials listed in Table P2906.5.

Multiple pan drains may terminate to a single discharge piping system when *approved*

by the administrative authority and permitted by the manufactures installation instructions and installed with those instructions. {existing text unchanged}

(Reason: Regionally accepted practice.)

\*\*\* **Section P2804.6.1; change to read as follows:**

**Section P2804.6.1 Requirements for discharge piping.** The discharge piping serving a pressure relief valve, temperature relief valve or combination thereof shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.
2. Discharge through an air gap ~~located in the same room as the water heater.~~
3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the air gap.
4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or equipment.

**Exception:** Multiple relief devices may be installed to a single T & P discharge piping system when approved by the administrative authority and permitted by the manufactures installation instructions and installed with those instructions.

5. Discharge ~~to the floor, to the pan serving the water heater or storage tank, to a waste receptor~~ an approved location or to the outdoors.

[remainder unchanged]

(Reason: To ensure the T&P is ran to the exterior.)

\*\***Section P2902.5.3; change to read as follows:**

**P2902.5.3 Lawn irrigation systems.** The potable water supply to lawn irrigation systems shall be protected against backflow by an atmospheric-type vacuum breaker, a pressure-type vacuum breaker, a double-check assembly or a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer. A valve shall not be installed downstream from an atmospheric vacuum breaker. Where chemicals are introduced into the system, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer.

(Reason: To provide clarity.)

\*\*\***Section P3003.9; change to read as follows:**

**P3003.9.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer that conforms to ASTM F 656 shall be applied. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D 2564, CSA B137.3, CSA B181.2 or CSA B182.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet and shall be in accordance with ASTM D 2855. Solvent cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

Exception: A primer is not required where both of the following conditions apply:

- ~~1. The solvent cement used is third party certified as conforming to ASTM D-2564~~
- ~~2. The solvent cement is used only for joining PVC drain, waste, and vent pipe and fittings in not pressure applications in sizes up to and including 4 inches (102mm) in diameter.~~

*(Reason: to keep the “process of joining PVC pipe”.)*

**\*\*Section P3111Combination waste and vent systems; delete this section in its entirety.**

*(Reason: A combination waste and vent system is not approved for use in residential construction.)*

**\*\*Section P3112.2 Vent Collection; delete and replace with the following:**

**P3112.2 Installation.** Traps for island sinks and similar equipment shall be roughed in above the floor and may be vented by extending the vent as high as possible, but not less than the drainboard height and then returning it downward and connecting it to the horizontal sink drain immediately downstream from the vertical fixture drain. The return vent shall be connected to the horizontal drain through a wye-branch fitting and shall, in addition, be provided with a foot vent taken off the vertical fixture vent by means of a wye-branch immediately below the floor and extending to the nearest partition and then through the roof to the open air or may be connected to other vents at a point not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) above the flood level rim of the fixtures served. Drainage fittings shall be used on all parts of the vent below the floor level and a minimum slope of one-quarter (1/4) inch per foot (20.9 mm/m) back to the drain shall be maintained. The return bend used under the drain-board shall be a one (1) piece fitting or an assembly of a forty-five (45) degree (0.79 radius), a ninety (90) degree (1.6 radius) and a forty-five (45) degree (0.79 radius) elbow in the order named. Pipe sizing shall be as elsewhere required in this Code. The island sink drain, upstream of the return vent, shall serve no other fixtures. An accessible cleanout shall be installed in the vertical portion of the foot vent.

*(Reason: To clarify the installation of island venting and to provide a regional guideline on a standard installation method for this region.)*

END

**Recommended Amendments to the  
2018 International Plumbing Code**  
North Central Texas Council of Governments Region

The following sections, paragraphs, and sentences of the *2018 International Plumbing Code* are hereby amended as follows: Standard type is text from the IPC. Underlined type is text inserted. ~~Lined through type is deleted text from the IPC.~~ A double asterisk at the beginning of a section identifies an amendment carried over from the 2015 edition of the code and a triple asterisk identifies a new or revised amendment with the 2018 edition of the code.

**Note:** Historically NCTCOG has limited Chapter 1 amendments in order to allow each city to insert their local policies and procedures. We now have suggested certain items to be brought to the attention of cities considering adoption of the code that may be of concern to several jurisdictions. **It is still intended to be discretionary to each city to determine which Chapter 1 amendments to include.**

**\*\*Table of Contents, Chapter 7, Section 714; change to read as follows:**

714     Engineered ~~Computerized~~ Drainage Design . . . . . 69

*(Reason: Editorial change to make compatible with amendment to Section 714.1.)*

**\*\*\*Section 102.8; change to read as follows:**

**102.8 Referenced codes and standards.** The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those that are listed in Chapter 15 and such codes, when specifically adopted, and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where the differences occur between provisions of this code and the referenced standards, the provisions of this code shall be the minimum requirements. Whenever amendments have been adopted to the referenced codes and standards, each reference to said code and standard shall be considered to reference the adopted amendments. Any reference to NFPA 70 shall mean the Electrical Code as adopted.

*(Reason: Legal wording to recognize locally adopted codes and amendments adopted with referenced codes.)*

**\*\*Sections 106.6.2 and 106.6.3; change to read as follows:**

**106.6.2 Fee schedule.** The fees for all plumbing work shall be as ~~indicated in the following schedule:~~ (JURISDICTION TO INSERT APPROPRIATE SCHEDULE) adopted by resolution of the governing body of the jurisdiction.

**106.6.3 Fee Refunds.** The code official shall establish a policy for ~~authorize~~ authorizing the refunding of fees ~~as follows.~~ *{Delete balance of section}*

*(Reason: This calls to attention of local jurisdictions considering adoption that they need a fee schedule and a refund policy.)*

**\*\*Section 109; delete entire section and insert the following:**

# SECTION 109

## MEANS OF APPEAL

**109.1 Application for appeal.** Any person shall have the right to appeal a decision of the code official to the board of appeals established by ordinance. The board shall be governed by the enabling ordinance.

*(Reason: Most jurisdictions already have an ordinance establishing and governing an appeals board for this code. This also calls to the attention of jurisdictions not having such a board that it needs to be established.)*

**\*\*\*Section 305; change to read as follows:**

**305.1 Protection against contact.** Metallic piping, except for cast iron, ductile iron and galvanized steel, shall not be placed in direct contact with steel framing members, concrete or cinder walls and floors or other masonry. Metallic piping shall not be placed in direct contact with corrosive soil. Where sheathing is used to prevent direct contact, the sheathing shall have a thickness of not less than 0.008 inch (8 mil) (0.203 mm) and the sheathing shall be made of approved material plastic. Where sheathing protects piping that penetrates concrete or masonry walls or floors, the sheathing shall be installed in a manner that allows movement of the piping within the sheathing.

*(Reason: Allows for other materials to be accepted.)*

**305.4.1 Sewer depth.** ~~Building sewers that connect to private sewage disposal systems shall be a minimum of [number] inches (mm) below finished grade at the point of septic tank connection.~~ Building sewers shall be a minimum of 12 inches (304 mm) below grade.

*(Reason: Provides sewer depth that is common in this region. Deleted reference to private sewage disposal because a private sewage disposal code is not typically adopted in this region.)*

**\*\*Section 305.7; change to read as follows:**

**305.7 Protection of components of plumbing system.** Components of a plumbing system installed within 3 feet along alleyways, driveways, parking garages or other locations in a manner in which they could be exposed to damage shall be recessed into the wall or otherwise protected in an approved manner.

*(Reason: Provide a common cutoff point to designate a general separation distance at which plumbing systems should be safe for consistency in enforcement.)*

**\*\*\*Section 306; change to read as follows:**

**\*\*\*306.2.4 Plastic sewer and DWV piping installation.** Plastic sewer and DWV piping installed underground shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Trench width shall be controlled to not exceed the outside the pipe diameter plus 16 inches or in a trench which has a controlled width equal to the nominal diameter of the diameter of the piping multiplied by 1.25 plus 12 inches. The piping shall be bedded in 4 inches of granular fill and then backfilled compacting the side fill in 6-inch layers on each side of the piping. The compaction shall be to minimum of 85 percent standard proctor density and extend to a minimum of 6 inches above the top of the pipe.

*(Reason: To follow manufacturer backfill requirements and to be clear to Inspectors out in the field)*

**\*\*Section 314.2.1; change to read as follows:**

**314.2.1 Condensate disposal.** Condensate from all cooling coils and evaporators shall be conveyed from the drain pan outlet to an *approved* place of disposal. ... {text unchanged} ... Condensate shall not discharge into a street, alley, sidewalk, rooftop, or other areas so as to cause a nuisance.

*(Reason: Greater specificity in prohibited locations for condensate discharge. It is the intent of this amendment to send condensate discharge into a sanitary sewer drain. Consistent with regional amendment to IMC 307.2.1.)*

**\*\*Section 409.2; change to read as follows:**

**409.2 Water connection.** The water supply to a commercial dishwashing machine shall be protected against backflow by an air gap or backflow preventer in accordance with Section 608. (Remainder of section unchanged).

*(Reason: Domestic dishwashing machines would be difficult to enforce and should already come equipped with backflow preventers. Consistent with regional amendments in IPC Section 608.)*

**\*\*Section 413.4; change to read as follows:**

**413.4 Required location for floor drains** ~~Public laundries and central washing facilities.~~ Floor drains shall be installed in the following areas:

1. In public laundries and in the central washing facilities of multiple family dwellings, the rooms containing automatic clothes washers shall be provided with floor drains located to readily drain the entire floor area. Such drains shall have a minimum outlet of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter.
2. Commercial kitchens. In lieu of floor drains in commercial kitchens, the Code Official may accept floor sinks.
3. Public restrooms.

*(Reason: To make more compatible with local health code practices.)*

**\*\*\*Section 502.3; change to read as follows:**

**502.3 Water heaters installed in attics.** Attics containing a water heater shall be provided . . . {bulk of paragraph unchanged} . . . side of the water heater. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm) where such dimensions are large enough to allow removal of the water heater. As a minimum, for access to the attic space, provide one of the following:

1. A permanent stair.
2. A pull-down stair with a minimum 300 lb (136 kg) capacity.
3. An access door from an upper floor level.
4. Access Panel may be used in lieu of items 1, 2, and 3 with prior approval of the Code Official due to building conditions.

---

**Exceptions:**



1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the appliance is capable of being serviced and removed... {remainder of text unchanged}

(Reason: To provide a safe means of accessibility to appliances in attics and to allow for different types of construction limitations. Consistent with regional amendment to IMC and IFGC)

**\*\*Section 502.6; add Section 502.6 to read as follows:**

**502.6 Water heaters above ground or floor.** When the attic, roof, mezzanine or platform in which a water heater is installed is more than ~~16 (16)~~ eight (8) feet (2438 mm) above the ground or floor level, it shall be made accessible by a stairway or permanent ladder fastened to the building.

**Exception:** A max 10-gallon water heater (or larger with approval) is capable of being accessed through a lay-in ceiling and a water heater is installed is not more than ten (10) feet (3048 mm) above the ground or floor level and may be reached with a portable ladder.

(Reason: To provide safe access to water heaters. (Consistent with regional amendments to IFGC 306.7 and IMC 306.3. Note reference to amendment above.)

**\*\*\*Section 504.6; change to read as follows:**

**504.6 Requirements for discharge piping.** The discharge piping serving a pressure relief valve, temperature relief valve or combination thereof shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.
2. Discharge through an air gap. ~~located in the same room as the water heater.~~
3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the air gap.
4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or equipment.

**Exception:** Multiple relief devices may be installed to a single T & P discharge piping system when approved by the administrative authority and permitted by the manufacture's installation instructions and installed with those instructions.

5. Discharge ~~to the floor, to the pan serving the water heater or storage tank, to a waste receptor an approved location~~ or to the outdoors.
6. Discharge in a manner that does not cause personal injury or structural damage.
7. Discharge to a termination point that is readily observable by the building occupants.
8. Not be trapped.
9. Be installed so as to flow by gravity.



10. Terminate not more than 6 inches above and not less than two times the discharge pipe diameter above the floor or flood level rim of the waste receptor.
11. Not have a threaded connection at the end of such piping.
12. Not have valves or tee fittings.
13. Be constructed of those materials listed in Section 605.4 or materials tested, rated and *approved* for such use in accordance with ASME A112.4.1.
14. Be one nominal size larger than the size of the relief valve outlet, where the relief valve discharge piping is installed with insert fittings. The outlet end of such tubing shall be fastened in place

*(Reason: To provide a higher degree of safety.)*

**\*\*Section 504.7.1; change to read as follows:**

**Section 504.7.1 Pan size and drain to read as follows:** The pan shall be not less than 11/2 inches (38 mm) in depth and shall be of sufficient size and shape to receive all dripping or condensate from the tank or water heater. The pan shall be drained by an indirect waste pipe having a diameter of not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm). Piping for safety pan drains shall be of those materials listed in Table 605.4. Multiple pan drains may terminate to a single discharge piping system when approved by the administrative authority and permitted by the manufactures installation instructions and installed with those instructions.

**\*\*Section 608.1; change to read as follows:**

**608.1 General.** A potable water supply system shall be designed, installed and maintained in such a manner so as to prevent contamination from non-potable liquids, solids or gases being introduced into the potable water supply through cross-connections or any other piping connections to the system. Backflow preventer applications shall conform to applicable local regulations, Table 608.1, ~~except and~~ as specifically stated in Sections 608.2 through 608.16.10.

*(Reason: To recognize local requirements.)*

**\*\*Section 608.17.5; change to read as follows:**

**608.17.5 Connections to lawn irrigation systems.**

The potable water supply to lawn irrigation systems shall be protected against backflow by an atmospheric-type vacuum breaker, a pressure-type vacuum breaker, a double-check assembly or a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer. A valve shall not be installed downstream from an atmospheric vacuum breaker. Where chemicals are introduced into the system, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer.

*(Reason: To recognize regional practices.)*

**\*\*Section 608.18; change to read as follows:**

**608.18 Protection of individual water supplies.** An individual water supply shall be located and constructed so as to be safeguarded against contamination in accordance with applicable local regulations. Installation shall be in accordance with Sections 608.17.1 through 608.17.8.

*(Reason: To allow local requirements to govern.)*

**Section 703.6; Delete**

(Reason: not a standard practice in this region)

**\*\*Section 704.5; added to read as follows:**

**704.5 Single stack fittings.** Single stack fittings with internal baffle, PVC schedule 40 or cast iron single stack shall be designed by a registered engineer and comply to a national recognized standard.

(Reason: to allow owners, installers, inspectors, and design professionals to readily identify product markers to determine they meet all required standards.)

**\*\*Section 712.5; add Section 712.5 to read as follows:**

**712.5 Dual Pump System.** All sumps shall be automatically discharged and, when in any "public use" occupancy where the sump serves more than 10 fixture units, shall be provided with dual pumps or ejectors arranged to function independently in case of overload or mechanical failure. For storm drainage sumps and pumping systems, see Section 1113.

(Reason: To address dual pump system. To provide reference for storm drainage systems.)

**\*\*Section 713, 713.1; change to read as follows:**

**SECTION 713**

# **ENGINEERED COMPUTERIZED DRAINAGE DESIGN**

**713.1 Design of drainage system.** The sizing, design and layout of the drainage system shall be permitted to be designed by a registered engineer using approved computer design methods.

(Reason: Code was too restrictive.)

**\*\*Section 803.3; added to read as follows:**

**803.3 Special waste pipe, fittings, and components.** Pipes, fittings, and components receiving or intended to receive the discharge of any fixture into which acid or corrosive chemicals are placed shall be constructed of CPVC, high silicone iron, PP, PVDF, chemical resistant glass, or glazed ceramic materials.

(Reason: To clarify the allowable materials which are specifically listed for chemical drainage applications.)

**\*\*Section 903.1; change to read as follows:**

**903.1 Roof extension.** Open vent pipes that extend through a roof shall terminate not less than six (6) inches (152 mm) above the roof. Where a roof is to be used for assembly or as a promenade, observation deck, sunbathing deck or similar purposes, open vent pipes shall terminate not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the roof.

*(Reason: To provide regional guideline on standard installation method for this area and address reference number correction.)*

**\*\*\*Section 918.8; change to read as follows.**

**918.8 Where permitted.** Individual, branch and circuit vents shall be permitted to terminate with a connection to an individual or branch-type air admittance valve in accordance with Section 918.3.1. Stack vents and vent stacks shall be permitted to terminate to stack-type air admittance valves in accordance with Section 918.3.2. Air admittance valves shall only be installed with the prior approval of the building official.

*(Reason: Mechanical Device that is subject to fail and not installed per manufacturer)*

**\*\*Section 1003; see note below:**

*{Until the Health and Water Departments of the area can coordinate a uniform grease interceptor section, each city will have to modify this section individually.}*

**\*\*Section 1106.1; change to read as follows:**

**1106.1 General.** The size of the vertical conductors and leaders, building storm drains, building storm sewers, and any horizontal branches of such drains or sewers shall be based on six (6) inches per hour ~~the 100-year hourly rainfall rate indicated in Figure 1106.1 or on other rainfall rates determined from approved local weather data.~~

*(Reason: Specify the roof drain size normally used in the area.)*

**\*\*Section 1108.3; change to read as follows:**

**1108.3 Sizing of secondary drains.** Secondary (emergency) roof drain systems shall be sized in accordance with Section 1106 ~~based on the rainfall rate for which the primary system is sized in Figure 1106.1 or on other rainfall rates determined from approved local weather data.~~ Scuppers shall be sized to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1101.7. Scuppers shall not have an opening dimension of less than 4 inches (102 mm). The flow through the primary system shall not be considered when sizing the secondary roof drain system.

*(Reason: Specify that overflow drainage is to be the same size as the normal roof drains.)*

**\*\*Section 1109; delete this section.**

**\*\*\*Section 1202.1; delete Exceptions 1 and 2.**

*(Reason: State law already specifies that Med Gas systems must comply with NFPA 99.)*

**END**

## Recommended Amendments to the 2018 International Mechanical Code

### North Central Texas Council of Governments Region

The following sections, paragraphs, and sentences of the *2018 International Mechanical Code* (IMC) are hereby amended as follows: Standard type is text from the IMC. Underlined type is text inserted. ~~Line through type~~ is deleted text from the IMC. A double asterisk at the beginning of a section identifies an amendment carried over from the 2015 edition of the code and a triple asterisk identifies a new or revised amendment of the 2018 edition of the code.

Note: Historically the North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) has limited Chapter 1 amendments in order to allow each city to insert their local policies and procedures. We now have suggested certain items to be brought to the attention of cities considering adoption of the code that may be of concern to several jurisdictions. **It is still intended to be discretionary to each city to determine which Chapter 1 amendments to include.**

**\*\*\*Section 102.8; change to read as follows:**

**102.8 Referenced Codes and Standards.** The codes and standards referenced herein shall be those that are listed in Chapter 15 and such codes, when specifically adopted, and standards shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where differences occur between provisions of this code and the referenced standards, the provisions of this code shall apply. Whenever amendments have been adopted to the referenced codes and standards, each reference to said code and standard shall be considered to reference the adopted amendments. Any reference to NFPA 70 shall mean the Electrical Code as adopted.

*(Reason: Legal wording to recognize locally adopted codes and amendments adopted with referenced codes.)*

**\*\*\*Section 306.3; change to read as follows:**

**306.3 Appliances in Attics.** Attics containing appliances shall be provided . . . *{bulk of paragraph unchanged}* . . . side of the appliance. The clear access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest appliance. As a minimum, for access to the attic space, provide one of the following:

4. A permanent stair.
5. A pull-down stair with a minimum 300 lb. (136 kg) capacity.
6. An access door from an upper floor level.
7. Access Panel may be used in lieu of items 1, 2, and 3 with prior approval of the code official due to building conditions.

**Exceptions:**

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the appliance is capable of being serviced and removed... *{remainder of section unchanged}*

*(Reason: To provide a safe means of accessibility to appliances in attics and to allow for different types of construction limitations. Consistent with regional amendment to International Fuel and Gas Code (IFGC) 306.3.)*

**\*\*\*Section 306.5; change to read as follows:**

**306.5 Equipment and Appliances on Roofs or Elevated Structures.** Where *equipment* requiring access or appliances are located on an elevated structure or the roof of a building such that personnel will have to climb higher than ~~46 feet (4877 mm)~~ 8 feet above grade to access, an interior or exterior means of access shall be provided. ~~Exterior ladders providing roof access need not extend closer than 12 feet (2438 mm) to the finish grade or floor level below and shall extend to the equipment and appliances' level service space.~~ Such access shall . . . {bulk of section to read the same} . . . on roofs having a slope greater than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope). ... {remainder of text unchanged}.

(Reason: To assure access to roof appliances and provide options to not extend exterior ladders to grade. Consistent with IFGC amendments.)

**\*\*Section 306.5.1; change to read as follows:**

**306.5.1 Sloped Roofs.** Where appliances, *equipment*, fans or other components that require service are installed on a roof having a slope of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater and having an edge more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade at such edge, a catwalk at least 16 inches in width with substantial cleats spaced not more than 16 inches apart shall be provided from the roof access to a level platform at the appliance. The level platform shall be provided on each side of the appliance to which access is required for service, repair or maintenance. The platform shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in any dimension and shall be provided with guards. The guards shall extend not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the platform, shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *International Building Code*...{remainder of text unchanged}.

(Reason: To assure safe access to roof appliances. Consistent with IFGC amendments.)

**\*\*Section 306; add Section 306.6 to read as follows:**

**306.6 Water Heaters Above Ground or Floor.** When the mezzanine or platform in which a water heater is installed is more than eight (8) feet (2438 mm) above the ground or floor level, it shall be made accessible by a stairway or permanent ladder fastened to the building.

**Exception:** A maximum 10 gallon water heater (or larger with approval) is capable of being accessed through a lay-in ceiling and the water heater installed is not more than ten (10) feet (3048 mm) above the ground or floor level and may be reached with a portable ladder.

(Reason: To provide safe access to water heaters and to provide lighting and receptacle for maintenance of equipment. Consistent with regional amendments to IFGC 306.7 and International Plumbing Code (IPC) 502.5.)

**\*\*Section 307.2.3; amend item 2 to read as follows:**

2. A separate overflow drain line shall be connected to the drain pan provided with the equipment. Such overflow drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The overflow drain line shall connect to the drain pan at a higher level than the primary drain connection. However, the conspicuous point shall not create a hazard such as dripping over a walking surface or other areas so as to create a nuisance.

(Reason: Greater specificity in prohibited locations for condensate discharge. Consistent with regional amendment to IPC 314.2.1.)

**\*\*Section 403.2.1; add an item 5 to read as follows:**

8. Toilet rooms within private dwellings that contain only a water closet, lavatory, or combination thereof may be ventilated with an approved mechanical recirculating fan or similar device

designed to remove odors from the air.

*(Reason: Consistent with common regional practice. Consistent with regional amendment to International Residential Code (IRC) R303.3.)*

**\*\*Section 501.3; add an exception to read as follows:**

**501.3 Exhaust Discharge.** The air removed by every mechanical exhaust system shall be discharged outdoors at a point where it will not cause a public nuisance and not less than the distances specified in Section 501.3.1. The air shall be discharged to a location from which it cannot again be readily drawn in by a ventilating system. Air shall not be exhausted into an attic, crawl space, or be directed onto walkways.

**Exceptions:**

1. Whole-house ventilation-type attic fans shall be permitted to discharge into the attic space of dwelling units having private attics.
2. Commercial cooking recirculating systems.
3. Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and where mechanical or natural ventilation is otherwise provided in accordance with Chapter 4, listed and labeled domestic ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.
4. Toilet room exhaust ducts may terminate in a warehouse or shop area when infiltration of outside air is present.

*(Reason: Provide a reasonable alternative in areas where a large volume of outside air is present.)*

**\*\*Section 607.5.1; change to read as follows:**

**607.5.1 Fire Walls.** Ducts and air transfer openings permitted in fire walls in accordance with Section 705.11 of the International Building Code shall be protected with listed fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing. For hazardous exhaust systems see Section 510.1-510.9 IMC.

*(Reason: Correspond with un-amended IBC 710.7.)*

**END**

## 2018 International Fuel Gas Code

### North Central Texas Council of Governments Region

The following sections, paragraphs, and sentences of the *2018 International Fuel Gas Code* are hereby amended as follows: Standard type is text from the IFGC. Underlined type is text inserted. ~~Lined through type is deleted text from IFGC.~~ A double asterisk at the beginning of a section identifies an amendment carried over from the 2015 edition of the code and a triple asterisk identifies a new or revised amendment with the 2018 code.

#### **\*\*Section 101.2**

*{Local amendments to Section 101.2 may be necessary to correspond with the State Plumbing Licensing Law.}*

#### **\*\*Section 102.2; add an exception to read as follows:**

**Exception:** Existing dwelling units shall comply with Section 621.2.

*(Reason: Previous code provisions made unvented heater provisions retroactive except as provided for in local amendment. This amendment and amendment to IFGC 621.2 better clarify what the code already states: existing systems may stay unless considered unsafe.)*

#### **\*\*Section 102.8; change to read as follows:**

**102.8 Referenced codes and standards.** The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those that are listed in Chapter 8 and such codes, when specifically adopted, and standards shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where differences occur between provisions of this code and the referenced standards, the provisions of this code shall apply. Whenever amendments have been adopted to the referenced codes and standards, each reference to said code and standard shall be considered to reference the amendments as well. Any reference to NFPA 70 or the ICC *Electrical Code* shall mean the Electrical Code as adopted.

*(Reason: Legal wording to recognize locally adopted codes and amendments adopted with referenced codes.)*

#### **\*\*\*Section 306.3; change to read as follows:**

**[M] 306.3 Appliances in attics.** Attics containing appliances shall be provided . . . *{bulk of paragraph unchanged}* . . . side of the *appliance*. The clear access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance*. As a minimum, for access to the attic space, provide one of the following:

9. A permanent stair.
10. A pull down stair with a minimum 300 lb (136 kg) capacity.
11. An access door from an upper floor level.
12. Access Panel may be used in lieu of items 1, 2, and 3 with prior approval of the code official due to building conditions.

#### **Exceptions:**



1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is not less than ... *{bulk of section to read the same}*.

(Reason: To provide a safe means of accessibility to appliances in attics and to allow for different types of construction limitations. Consistent with regional amendment to IMC 306.3.)

**\*\*\*Section 306.5; change to read as follows:**

**[M] 306.5 Equipment and Appliances on Roofs or Elevated Structures.** Where *equipment* requiring access or appliances are located on an elevated structure or the roof of a building such that personnel will have to climb higher than ~~16 feet (4877 mm)~~ 8 feet above grade to access, an interior or exterior means of access shall be provided. ~~Exterior ladders providing roof access need not extend closer than 12 feet (2438 mm) to the finish grade or floor level below and shall extend to the equipment and appliances' level service space.~~ Such access shall . . . *{bulk of section to read the same}* . . . on roofs having a slope greater than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope). ... *{remainder of text unchanged}*.

(Reason: To assure safe access to roof appliances. Consistent with IMC amendments.)

**\*\*Section 306.5.1; change to read as follows:**

**[M] 306.5.1 Sloped roofs.** Where appliances, *equipment*, fans or other components that require service are installed on a roof having a slope of 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater and having an edge more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade at such edge, a catwalk at least 16 inches in width with substantial cleats spaced not more than 16 inches apart shall be provided from the roof access to a level platform at the appliance. The level platform shall be provided on each side of the appliance to which access is required for service, repair or maintenance. The platform shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in any dimension and shall be provided with guards. The guards shall extend not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the platform, shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *International Building Code*.

(Reason: To assure safe access to roof appliances. Consistent with IMC amendments.)

**\*\*Section 401.5; add a second paragraph to read as follows:**

Both ends of each section of medium pressure gas piping shall identify its operating gas pressure with an approved tag. The tags are to be composed of aluminum or stainless steel and the following wording shall be stamped into the tag:

"WARNING  
1/2 to 5 psi gas pressure  
Do Not Remove"

(Reason: To protect homeowners and plumbers.)

**\*\*Section 404.12; change to read as follows:**

**404.12 Minimum burial depth.** Underground piping systems shall be installed a minimum depth of ~~42~~ 18 inches (305 ~~458~~ mm) top of pipe below grade, ~~except as provided for in Section 404.12.4.~~

**404.12.1 Delete in its entirety**

(Reason: To provide increased protection to piping systems and address reference number change.)

**\*\*Section 406.4; change to read as follows:**



**406.4 Test pressure measurement.** Test pressure shall be measured with a monometer or with a pressure-measuring device designed and calibrated to read, record, or indicate a pressure loss caused by leakage during the pressure test period. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the pressure tests are made. ~~Mechanical gauges used to measure test pressures shall have a range such that the highest end of the scale is not greater than five times the test pressure.~~

*(Reason: To require the use of more accurate diaphragm gauges. Spring gauges do not provide accurate measurement below approximately 17 psig.)*

**\*\*Section 406.4.1; change to read as follows:**

**406.4.1 Test pressure.** The test pressure to be used shall be no less than ~~1 1/2 times the proposed maximum working pressure, but no less than 3~~ 3 psig (20 kPa gauge), ~~or at the discretion of the Code Official, the piping and valves may be tested at a pressure of at least six (6) inches (152 mm) of mercury, measured with a manometer or slope gauge, irrespective of design pressure. Where the test pressure exceeds 125 psig (862 kPa gauge), the test pressure shall not exceed a value that produces a hoop stress in the piping greater than 50 percent of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe. For tests requiring a pressure of 3 psig, diaphragm gauges shall utilize a dial with a minimum diameter of three and one half inches (3 1/2"), a set hand, 1/10 pound incrementation and pressure range not to exceed 6 psi for tests requiring a pressure of 3 psig. For tests requiring a pressure of 10 psig, diaphragm gauges shall utilize a dial with a minimum diameter of three and one-half inches (3 1/2"), a set hand, a minimum of 2/10 pound incrementation and a pressure range not to exceed 20 psi. For welded piping, and for piping carrying gas at pressures in excess of fourteen (14) inches water column pressure (3.48 kPa) (1/2 psi) and less than 200 inches of water column pressure (52.2 kPa) (7.5 psi), the test pressure shall not be less than ten (10) pounds per square inch (69.6 kPa). For piping carrying gas at a pressure that exceeds 200 inches of water column (52.2 kPa) (7.5 psi), the test pressure shall be not less than one and one-half times the proposed maximum working pressure.~~

Diaphragm gauges used for testing must display a current calibration and be in good working condition. The appropriate test must be applied to the diaphragm gauge used for testing.

*(Reason: To provide for lesser pressures to coordinate with the use of more accurate diaphragm gauges.)*

**\*\*Section 409.1; add Section 409.1.4 to read as follows:**

**409.1.4 Valves in CSST installations.** Shutoff valves installed with corrugated stainless steel (CSST) piping systems shall be supported with an approved termination fitting, or equivalent support, suitable for the size of the valves, of adequate strength and quality, and located at intervals so as to prevent or damp out excessive vibration but in no case greater than 12-inches from the center of the valve. Supports shall be installed so as not to interfere with the free expansion and contraction of the system's piping, fittings, and valves between anchors. All valves and supports shall be designed and installed so they will not be disengaged by movement of the supporting piping.

*(Reason: To provide proper security to CSST valves. These standards were established in this region in 1999 when CSST was an emerging technology.)*

**\*\*Section 410.1; add a second paragraph and exception to read as follows:**

Access to regulators shall comply with the requirements for access to appliances as specified in Section 306.

**Exception:** A passageway or level service space is not required when the regulator is capable of being serviced and removed through the required attic opening.

*(Reason: To require adequate access to regulators.)*

**\*\*Section 621.2; add exception as follows:**

**621.2 Prohibited use.** One or more unvented room heaters shall not be used as the sole source of comfort heating in a dwelling unit.

**Exception:** Existing *approved* unvented heaters may continue to be used in dwelling units, in accordance with the code provisions in effect when installed, when *approved* by the Code Official unless an unsafe condition is determined to exist as described in Section 108.7.

*(Reason: Gives code official discretion.)*



**END**

## North Central Texas Council of Governments Region

The following sections, paragraphs, and sentences of the *2018 International Fire Code* (IFC) are hereby amended as follows: Standard type is text from the IFC. Underlined type is text inserted. ~~Lined through type is deleted text from IFC.~~ A double asterisk (\*\*) at the beginning of a section identifies an amendment carried over from the 2015 edition of the code and a triple asterisk (\*\*\*) identifies a new or revised amendment with the 2018 code.

Note: Historically, the North Central Texas Council of Governments (NCTCOG) has limited Chapter 1 amendments in order to allow each city to insert their local policies and procedures. We now have suggested certain items to be brought to the attention of cities considering adoption of the code that may be of concern to several jurisdictions. **It is still intended to be discretionary to each city to determine which Chapter 1 amendments to include.** Note that Appendices must be specifically adopted by Ordinance. As per Page vii of the 2018 IFC, note that several sections of the code require jurisdictional specificity as to dollar amounts, geographic limits, etc. and are not addressed in these amendments.

### **Explanation of Options A and B:**

Please note that as there is a wide range in firefighting philosophies/capabilities of cities across the region, OPTIONS "A" and "B" are provided in the Fire and Building Code amendments. Jurisdictions should choose one of these based on their fire-fighting philosophies/capabilities when adopting code amendments.

### **\*\*Section 102.1; change #3 to read as follows:**

3. Existing structures, facilities, and conditions when required in Chapter 11 or in specific sections of this code.

*(Reason: To clarify that there are other provisions in the fire code applicable to existing buildings that are not located in Chapter 11, including but not limited to Section 505 Premises Identification.)*

### **\*\*Section 105.3.3; change to read as follows:**

**105.3.3 Occupancy Prohibited before Approval.** The building or structure shall not be occupied prior to the fire code official issuing a permit when required and conducting associated inspections indicating the applicable provisions of this code have been met.

*(Reason: For clarity to allow for better understanding in areas not requiring such permits, such as unincorporated areas of counties. This amendment may be struck by a city.)*

### **\*\*Section 105.7; add Section 105.7.26 to read as follows:**

**105.7.26 Electronic access control systems.** Construction permits are required for the installation or modification of an electronic access control system, as specified in Chapter 10. A separate construction permit is required for the installation or modification of a fire alarm system that may be connected to the access control system. Maintenance performed in accordance with this code is not considered a modification and does not require a permit.

*(Reason: Adds construction permit requirements for electronic access control systems affecting access and/or egress to ensure proper design and installation of such systems. These changes reflect local practices of municipalities in this region.)*

### **\*\*Section 202; amend and add definitions to read as follows:**

**\*\* [B] AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY.** Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical, surgical, psychiatric, nursing, or similar care on a less than 24-hour basis to persons who are rendered incapable of self-preservation by the services provided or staff has accepted responsibility for care recipients already incapable. This group may include but not be limited to the following:

- Dialysis centers
- Procedures involving sedation
- Sedation dentistry
- Surgery centers
- Colonic centers
- Psychiatric centers

*(Reason: to clarify the range of uses included in the definition)*

**\*\* [B] ATRIUM.** An opening connecting ~~two~~ three or more stories... *{remaining text unchanged}*

*(Reason: Accepted practice in the region based on legacy codes. IBC Section 1009 permits unenclosed two story stairways under certain circumstances.)*

**\*\* [B] DEFEND IN PLACE.** A method of emergency response that engages building components and trained staff to provide occupant safety during an emergency. Emergency response involves remaining in place, relocating within the building, or both, without evacuating the building.

*(Reason: Added from International Building Code (IBC) definitions for consistency in interpretation of the subject requirements pertaining to such occupancies.)*

**\*\*FIRE WATCH.** A temporary measure intended to ensure continuous and systematic surveillance of a building or portion thereof by one or more qualified individuals or standby personnel when required by the fire code official, for the purposes of identifying and controlling fire hazards, detecting early signs of unwanted fire, raising an alarm of fire and notifying the fire department.

*(Reason: Clearly defines options to the fire department for providing a fire watch.)*

**\*\*FIREWORKS.** Any composition or device for the purpose of producing a visible or an audible effect for entertainment purposes by combustion, deflagration, ~~or detonation~~, and/or activated by ignition with a match or other heat producing device that meets the definition of 1.3G fireworks or 1.4G fireworks. ... *{Remainder of text unchanged}*...

*(Reason: Increased safety from fireworks related injuries.)*

**~~\*\*Option A:~~**

**~~HIGH-PILED COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE: add a second paragraph to read as follows:~~**

~~Any building classified as a group S Occupancy or Speculative Building exceeding 12,000 sq. ft. that has a clear height in excess of 14 feet, making it possible to be used for storage in excess of 12 feet, shall be considered to be high-piled storage. When a specific product cannot be identified, a fire protection system and life safety features shall be installed as for Class IV commodities, to the maximum pile height.~~

**\*\*Option B**

**HIGH-PILED COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE:** *add a second paragraph to read as follows:*

Any building classified as a group S Occupancy or Speculative Building exceeding 6,000 sq. ft. that has a clear height in excess of 14 feet, making it possible to be used for storage in excess of 12 feet, shall be considered to be high-piled storage. When a specific product cannot be identified, a fire protection system and life safety features shall be installed as for Class IV commodities, to the maximum pile height.

*(Reason: To provide protection for worst-case scenario in flexible or unknown situations.)*

**~~\*\*Option A~~**

**~~HIGH RISE BUILDING. (No Change Required)~~**

**\*\*Option B**

**HIGH-RISE BUILDING.** A building with an occupied floor located more than ~~75~~ 55 feet (~~22-860~~ 16 764 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

*(Reason: Allows for additional construction safety features to be provided, based on firefighting response capabilities.)*

**\*\*REPAIR GARAGE.** A building, structure or portion thereof used for servicing or repairing motor vehicles. This occupancy shall also include garages involved in minor repair, modification and servicing of motor vehicles for items such as lube changes, inspections, windshield repair or replacement, shocks, minor part replacement, and other such minor repairs.

*(Reason: To further clarify types of service work allowed in a repair garage, as well as to correspond with definition in the IBC.)*

**\*\*SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITY.** **Real property designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.**

*(Reason: To provide a definition that does not exist in the code.)*

**\*\*STANDBY PERSONNEL.** Qualified fire service personnel, approved by the Fire Chief. When utilized, the number required shall be as directed by the Fire Chief. Charges for utilization shall be as normally calculated by the jurisdiction.

*(Reason: To provide a definition that does not exist in the code for fire watch accommodations as required by the jurisdiction.)*

**\*\*UPGRADED OR REPLACED FIRE ALARM SYSTEM.** A fire alarm system that is upgraded or replaced includes, but is not limited to the following:

- Replacing one single board or fire alarm control unit component with a newer model
- Installing a new fire alarm control unit in addition to or in place of an existing one
- Conversion from a horn system to an emergency voice/alarm communication system
- Conversion from a conventional system to one that utilizes addressable or analog devices

The following are not considered an upgrade or replacement:

- Firmware updates
- Software updates
- Replacing boards of the same model with chips utilizing the same or newer firmware

*(Reason: This is referenced in several places, but the wording of “upgraded or replaced” is somewhat ambiguous and open to interpretation. Defining it here allows for consistent application across the region.)*

**\*\*Section 307.1.1; change to read as follows:**

**307.1.1 Prohibited Open Burning.** Open burning ~~shall be prohibited~~ that is offensive or objectionable because of smoke emissions or when atmospheric conditions or local circumstances make such fires hazardous shall be prohibited.

**Exception:** {No change.}

*(Reason: To further protect adjacent property owners/occupants from open burning and/or smoke emissions from open burning.)*

**\*\*Section 307.2; change to read as follows:**

**307.2 Permit Required.** A permit shall be obtained from the *fire code official* in accordance with Section 105.6 prior to kindling a fire for recognized silvicultural or range or wildlife management practices, prevention or control of disease or pests, or open burning—a bonfire. Application for such approval shall only be presented by and permits issued to the owner of the land upon which the fire is to be kindled.

Examples of state or local law, or regulations referenced elsewhere in this section may include but not be limited to the following:

1. Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) guidelines and/or restrictions.
2. State, County, or Local temporary or permanent bans on open burning.
3. Local written policies as established by the *fire code official*.

*(Reason: Amendments to 307.2, 307.4, 307.4.3, and 307.5 better explain current requirements and recognize that jurisdictions have local established policies that best fit their environments.)*

**\*\*Section 307.3; change to read as follows:**

**307.3 Extinguishment Authority.** ~~When open burning creates or adds to a hazardous situation, or a required permit for open burning has not been obtained, the fire code official is authorized to order the extinguishment of the open burning operation. The fire code official is authorized to order the extinguishment by the permit holder, another person responsible or the fire department of open burning that creates or adds to a hazardous or objectionable situation.~~

*(Reason: Provides direction as to responsible parties relative to extinguishment of the subject open burning.)*

**\*\*Section 307.4; change to read as follows:**

**307.4 Location.** The location for open burning shall not be less than ~~50 300~~ feet (45-240 91 440 mm) from any structure, and provisions shall be made to prevent the fire from spreading to within ~~50 300~~ feet (45-240 91 440 mm) of any structure.

**Exceptions:** {No change.}

*(Reason: To increase the separation distance thereby increasing the safety to adjacent properties, as per applicable TCEQ rules and regulations regarding outdoor burning.)*

**\*\*Section 307.4.3, Exceptions; add exception #2 to read as follows:**

**Exceptions:**

2. Where buildings, balconies and decks are protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system.

*(Reason: To reflect similar allowances for open-flame cooking in these same locations.)*

**\*\*Section 307.4.4 and 307.4.5; change to read as follows:**

**307.4.4 Permanent Outdoor Firepit.** Permanently installed outdoor firepits for recreational fire purposes shall not be installed within 10 feet of a structure or combustible material.

**Exception:** Permanently installed outdoor fireplaces constructed in accordance with the International Building Code.

**307.4.5 Trench Burns.** Trench burns shall be conducted in air curtain trenches and in accordance with Section 307.2.

*(Reason: To provide a greater level of safety for this potentially hazardous fire exposure condition. Decrease in separation distance allowed for outdoor firepits due to permanent nature of construction having substantial securement.)*

**\*\*Section 307.5; change to read as follows:**

**307.5 Attendance.** Open burning, trench burns, bonfires, recreational fires, and use of portable outdoor fireplaces shall be constantly attended until the... {Remainder of section unchanged}

*(Reason: Adds attendance for trench burns based on previous amendment provision for such.)*

**\*\*Section 308.1.4; change to read as follows:**

**308.1.4 Open-flame Cooking Devices.** ~~Charcoal burners and other~~ Open-flame cooking devices, charcoal grills and other similar devices used for cooking shall not be operated located or used on combustible balconies, decks, or within 10 feet (3048 mm) of combustible construction.

**Exceptions:**

1. One- and two-family dwellings, except that LP-gas containers are limited to a water capacity not greater than 50 pounds (22.68 kg) [nominal 20 pound (9.08 kg) LP-gas capacity] with an aggregate LP-gas capacity not to exceed 100 pounds (5 containers).
2. Where buildings, balconies and decks are protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system, except that LP-gas containers are limited to a water capacity not greater than 50 pounds (22.68 kg) [nominal 20 pound (9.08 kg) LP-gas capacity], with an aggregate LP-gas capacity not to exceed 40 lbs. (2 containers).
3. {No change.}

*(Reason: Decrease fire risk in multi-family dwellings and minimizes ignition sources and clarify allowable limits for 1 & 2 family dwellings, and allow an expansion for sprinklered multi-family uses. This amendment adds clarification and defines the container size allowed for residences.)*

**\*\*Section 308.1.6.2, Exception #3; change to read as follows:****Exceptions:**

3. Torches or flame-producing devices in accordance with Section ~~308.4~~ 308.1.3.

*(Reason: Section identified in published code is inappropriate.)*

**\*\*Section 308.1.6.3; change to read as follows:**



**308.1.6.3 Sky Lanterns.** A person shall not release or cause to be released an ~~untethered unmanned~~ free-floating device containing an open flame or other heat source, such as but not limited to a sky lantern.

*(Reason: Eliminates the potential fire hazard presented by utilization of such devices and the potential accidental release of such devices.)*

**\*\*Section 311.5; change to read as follows:**

**311.5 Placards.** ~~Any~~ The fire code official is authorized to require marking of any vacant or abandoned buildings or structures determined to be unsafe pursuant to Section 110 of this code relating to structural or interior hazards, ~~shall be marked~~ as required by Section 311.5.1 through 311.5.5.

*(Reason: There may be situations where placarding is not desired or necessary; also clarifies intent that it is not the fire code official's responsibility to provide the placard.)*

**\*\*Section 403.5; change Section 403.5 to read as follows:**

**403.5 Group E Occupancies.** An approved fire safety and evacuation plan in accordance with Section 404 shall be prepared and maintained for Group E occupancies and for buildings containing both a Group E occupancy and an atrium. A diagram depicting two evacuation routes shall be posted in a conspicuous location in each classroom. Group E occupancies shall also comply with Sections 403.5.1 through 403.5.3.

*(Reason: The diagrams are intended to assist with egress in such occupancies – specifically, the primary teacher is not always present to assist children with egress. Also, such will help reinforce evacuation drill requirements.)*

**\*\*Section 404.2.2; add Number 4.10 to read as follows:**

4.10 Fire extinguishing system controls.

*(Reason: The committee believed this information could be of great help to such plans to facilitate locating sprinkler valves to minimize water damage, for instance.)*

**\*\*Section 405.4; change Section 405.4 to read as follows:**

**405.4 Time.** The fire code official may require an evacuation drill at any time. Drills shall be held at unexpected times and under varying conditions to simulate the unusual conditions that occur in case of fire.

*(Reason: This change clarifies who may require a fire or evacuation drill).*

**\*\*Section 501.4; change to read as follows:**

**501.4 Timing of Installation.** When fire apparatus access roads or a water supply for fire protection is required to be installed for any structure or development, they shall be installed, tested, and approved prior to the time of which construction has progressed beyond completion of the foundation of any structure. , such protection shall be installed and made serviceable prior to and during the time of construction ~~except when approved alternative methods of protection are provided.~~ Temporary street signs shall be installed at each street intersection when construction of new roadways allows passage by vehicles in accordance with Section 505.2.

*(Reason: Reflects current practice in the region relative to ensuring fire department and EMS access during construction, which can be a time of increased frequency for emergency incidents.)*



**\*\*Section 503.1.1; add sentence to read as follows:**

Except for one- or two-family dwellings, the path of measurement shall be along a minimum of a ten feet (10') wide unobstructed pathway around the external walls of the structure.

*(Reason: Recognizes that the hose lay provision can only be measured along a pathway that is wide enough for fire fighter access.)*

**\*\*Section 503.2.1; change to read as follows:**

**503.2.1 Dimensions.** Fire apparatus access roads shall have an unobstructed width of not less than ~~20 24 feet (6096 mm)~~ 7315 mm, exclusive of shoulders, except for approved security gates in accordance with Section 503.6, and an unobstructed vertical clearance of not less than ~~13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm)~~ 14 feet (4267 mm).

**Exception:** Vertical clearance may be reduced; provided such reduction does not impair access by fire apparatus and approved signs are installed and maintained indicating the established vertical clearance when approved.

*(Reason: Amendments to 503.2.1 and 503.2.2 recognize that the equipment now used in firefighting is increasing in size. The code already recognizes that larger dimensions may be required under Section 503.2.2. The amendments are to standardize the dimensions for this area. With the increase in fire apparatus size, this will allow for the passage of two fire apparatus during a fire or EMS emergency.)*

**\*\*Section 503.2.2; change to read as follows:**

**503.2.2 Authority.** The fire code official shall have the authority to require an increase in the minimum access widths and vertical clearances where they are inadequate for fire or rescue operations.

*(Reason: Amendments to 503.2.1 and 503.2.2 recognize that the equipment now used in firefighting is increasing in size. The code already recognizes that larger dimensions may be required under Section 503.2.2. The amendments are to standardize the dimensions for this area. With the increase in fire apparatus size, this will allow for the passage of two fire apparatus during a fire or EMS emergency.)*

**\*\*Section 503.2.3; change Section 503.2.3 to read as follows:**

**503.2.3 Surface.** Fire apparatus access roads shall be designed and maintained to support imposed loads of 80,000 Lbs. for fire apparatus and shall be surfaced so as to provide all-weather driving capabilities.

*(Reason: To address the current size of fire trucks in use – figure derived from DOT requirements for waiver of vehicle exceeding such weight.)*

**\*\*Section 503.3; change to read as follows:**

**503.3 Marking.** ~~Where required by the fire code official, approved signs or other approved notices or markings that include the words NO PARKING FIRE LANE~~ Striping, signs, or other markings, when approved by the fire code official, shall be provided for fire apparatus access roads to identify such roads or prohibit the obstruction thereof. The means by which fire lanes are designated Striping, signs and other markings shall be maintained in a clean and legible condition at all times and be replaced or repaired when necessary to provide adequate visibility.

**(1) Striping** – Fire apparatus access roads shall be continuously marked by painted lines of red traffic paint six inches (6") in width to show the boundaries of the lane. The words "NO PARKING FIRE

LANE" or "FIRE LANE NO PARKING" shall appear in four inch (4") white letters at 25 feet intervals on the red border markings along both sides of the fire lanes. Where a curb is available, the striping shall be on the vertical face of the curb.

(2) Signs – Signs shall read "NO PARKING FIRE LANE" or "FIRE LANE NO PARKING" and shall be 12" wide and 18" high. Signs shall be painted on a white background with letters and borders in red, using not less than 2" lettering. Signs shall be permanently affixed to a stationary post and the bottom of the sign shall be six feet, six inches (6'6") above finished grade. Signs shall be spaced not more than fifty feet (50') apart along both sides of the fire lane. Signs may be installed on permanent buildings or walls or as approved by the Fire Chief.

*(Reason: Establishes a standard method of marking and reflects local long-standing practices.)*

**\*\*Section 503.4; change to read as follows:**

**503.4 Obstruction of Fire Apparatus Access Roads.** Fire apparatus access roads shall not be obstructed in any manner, including the parking of vehicles. The minimum widths and clearances established in Section 503.2.1 and any area marked as a fire lane as described in Section 503.3 shall be maintained at all times.

*(Reason: As originally worded, the section implied that vehicles could be parked in the marked fire lane and not be in violation if the minimum width is still maintained. Current accepted enforcement practice is to require the entire marked fire lane to be maintained clear and unobstructed.)*

**\*\*Section 505.1; change to read as follows:**

**505.1 Address Identification.** New and existing buildings shall be provided with approved address identification. The address identification shall be legible and placed in a position that is visible from the street or road fronting the property. Address identification characters shall contrast with their background. Address numbers shall be Arabic numbers or alphabetical letters. Numbers shall not be spelled out. Each character shall be not less than ~~4 inches (102 mm)~~ 6 inches (152.4 mm) high with a minimum stroke width of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm). Where required by the fire code official, address numbers shall be provided in additional approved locations to facilitate emergency response. Where access is by means of a private road, ~~buildings do not immediately front a street, and/or the building cannot be viewed from the public way, a monument, pole or other sign with approved 6 inch (152.4 mm) height building numerals or addresses and 4 inch (101.6 mm) height suite/apartment numerals of a color contrasting with the background of the building or other approved means shall be used to identify the structure. Numerals or addresses shall be posted on a minimum 20 inch (508 mm) by 30 inch (762 mm) background on border.~~ Address identification shall be maintained.

**Exception:** R-3 Single Family occupancies shall have approved numerals of a minimum 3 ½ inches (88.9 mm) in height and a color contrasting with the background clearly visible and legible from the street fronting the property and rear alleyway where such alleyway exists.

*(Reason: To increase the minimum addressing requirements for commercial properties and establish a minimum for single-family residential properties. Such improves legibility of these signs which are critical to emergency response in a more timely manner.)*

**\*\*Section 507.4; change to read as follows:**

**507.4 Water Supply Test Date and Information.** The water supply test used for hydraulic calculation of fire protection systems shall be conducted in accordance with NFPA 291 "Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Hydrants" and within one year of sprinkler plan submittal. The fire code official shall be notified prior to the water supply test. Water supply tests shall be witnessed by the fire code official, as required or approved documentation of the test shall be provided to the fire code official prior to final approval of the water supply system. The exact location of the static/residual hydrant and the flow hydrant shall be indicated on the design drawings. All fire protection plan submittals shall be accompanied by a hard copy of the waterflow test report, or as approved by the fire code official. The

report must indicate the dominant water tank level at the time of the test and the maximum and minimum operating levels of the tank, as well, or identify applicable water supply fluctuation. The licensed contractor must then design the fire protection system based on this fluctuation information, as per the applicable referenced NFPA standard. Reference Section 903.3.5 for additional design requirements.

*(Reason: Clarifies intent of the test to ensure contractor accounts for water supply fluctuations.)*

**\*\*Section 507.5.4; change to read as follows:**

**507.5.4 Obstruction.** Unobstructed access to fire hydrants shall be maintained at all times. Posts, fences, vehicles, growth, trash, storage and other materials or objects shall not be placed or kept near fire hydrants, fire department inlet connections or fire protection system control valves in a manner that would prevent such equipment or fire hydrants from being immediately discernible. The fire department shall not be deterred or hindered from gaining immediate access to fire protection equipment or fire hydrants.

*(Reason: Additional guidance based on legacy language to ensure these critical devices are available in an emergency incident.)*

**\*\*Section 509.1.2; add new Section 509.1.2 to read as follows:**

**509.1.2 Sign Requirements.** Unless more stringent requirements apply, lettering for signs required by this section shall have a minimum height of 2 inches (50.8 mm) when located inside a building and 4 inches (101.6 mm) when located outside, or as approved by the *fire code official*. The letters shall be of a color that contrasts with the background.

*(Reason: Provides direction as to appropriate sign criteria to develop local and regional consistency in this regard.)*

**\*\*\*Section 603.3.2 and 603.3.2.1; change to read as follows:**

**603.3.1 Fuel oil storage in outside, above-ground tanks.** Where connected to a fuel-oil piping system, the maximum amount of fuel oil storage allowed outside above ground without additional protection shall be 660 gallons (2498 L). The storage of fuel oil above ground in quantities exceeding 660 gallons (2498 L) shall comply with NFPA 31 and Chapter 57.

**603.3.2 Fuel oil storage inside buildings.** Fuel oil storage inside buildings shall comply with Sections 603.3.2.1 through 603.3.2.5 ~~or~~ and Chapter 57.

**603.3.2.1 Quantity limits.** One or more fuel oil storage tanks containing Class II or III *combustible liquid* shall be permitted in a building. The aggregate capacity of all tanks shall not exceed the following:

1. 660 gallons (2498 L) in unsprinklered buildings, where stored in a tank complying with UL 80, UL 142 or UL 2085 for Class III liquids, and also listed as a double-wall/secondary containment tank for Class II liquids.
2. 1,320 gallons (4996 L) in buildings equipped with an *automatic sprinkler* system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, where stored in a tank complying with UL 142 or UL 2085 as a double-wall/secondary containment tank.
3. 3,000 gallons (11 356 L) where stored in protected above-ground tanks complying with UL 2085 and Section 5704.2.9.7 and the room is protected by an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

*(Reason: Issues addressed by Chapter 57, such as venting to outside of buildings, remote fill to outside of building, overfill protection, physical protection, etc., are not included in Section 603.3, so compliance with Chapter 57 is also required. The Board determined that fuel storage in such tanks inside of buildings is commonly in double-wall tanks, and that this inherent leak protection was prudent in order to allow these quantities of combustible liquids to be stored inside a building for such purpose.)*

**\*\*Section 807.5.2.2 and 807.5.2.3; change to read as follows:**

**807.5.2.2 Artwork in Corridors.** Artwork and teaching materials shall be limited on the walls of corridors to not more than 20 percent of the wall area. Such materials shall not be continuous from floor to ceiling or wall to wall. Curtains, draperies, wall hangings, and other decorative material suspended from the walls or ceilings shall meet the flame propagation performance criteria of NFPA 701 in accordance with Section 807 or be noncombustible.

**Exception:** Corridors protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be limited to 50 percent of the wall area.

**807.5.2.3 Artwork in Classrooms.** Artwork and teaching materials shall be limited on walls of classrooms to not more than 50 percent of the specific wall area to which they are attached. Curtains, draperies, wall hangings and other decorative material suspended from the walls or ceilings shall meet the flame propagation performance criteria of NFPA 701 in accordance with Section 807 or be noncombustible.

*(Reason: This change allows an increase in wall coverage due to the presence of sprinklers. Also provides additional guidance relative to fire resistance requirements in these areas.)*

**\*\*Section 807.5.5.2 and 807.5.5.3; change to read as follows:**

**807.5.5.2 Artwork in Corridors.** Artwork and teaching materials shall be limited on the walls of corridors to not more than 20 percent of the wall area. Such materials shall not be continuous from floor to ceiling or wall to wall. Curtains, draperies, wall hangings and other decorative material suspended from the walls or ceilings shall meet the flame propagation performance criteria of NFPA 701 in accordance with Section 807 or be noncombustible.

**Exception:** Corridors protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be limited to 50 percent of the wall area.

**807.5.5.3 Artwork in Classrooms.** Artwork and teaching materials shall be limited on walls of classrooms to not more than 50 percent of the specific wall area to which they are attached. Curtains, draperies, wall hangings and other decorative material suspended from the walls or ceilings shall meet the flame propagation performance criteria of NFPA 701 in accordance with Section 807 or be noncombustible.

*(Reason: This change allows an increase in wall coverage due to the presence of sprinklers. Also provides additional guidance relative to fire resistance requirements in these areas.)*

**\*\*\*Section 901.6.1; add Section 901.6.1.1 to read as follows:**

**901.6.1.1 Standpipe Testing.** Building owners/managers must maintain and test standpipe systems as per NFPA 25 requirements. The following additional requirements shall be applied to the testing that is required every 5 years:

10. The piping between the Fire Department Connection (FDC) and the standpipe shall be backflushed or inspected by approved camera when foreign material is present or when caps are missing, and also hydrostatically tested for all FDC's on any type of standpipe system. Hydrostatic testing shall also be conducted in accordance with NFPA 25 requirements for the different types of standpipe systems.
11. For any manual (dry or wet) standpipe system not having an automatic water supply capable of flowing water through the standpipe, the tester shall connect hose from a fire hydrant or portable pumping system (as approved by the fire code official) to each FDC, and flow water through the standpipe system to the roof outlet to verify that each inlet connection functions properly. Confirm that there are no open hose valves prior to introducing water into a dry standpipe. There is no required pressure criteria at the outlet. Verify that check valves function properly and that there are no closed control valves on the system.
12. Any pressure relief, reducing, or control valves shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 25. All hose valves shall be exercised.

13. If the FDC is not already provided with approved caps, the contractor shall install such caps for all FDC's as required by the fire code official.
14. Upon successful completion of standpipe test, place a blue tag (as per Texas Administrative Code, Fire Sprinkler Rules for Inspection, Test and Maintenance Service (ITM) Tag) at the bottom of each standpipe riser in the building. The tag shall be check-marked as "Fifth Year" for Type of ITM, and the note on the back of the tag shall read "5 Year Standpipe Test" at a minimum.
15. The procedures required by Texas Administrative Code Fire Sprinkler Rules with regard to Yellow Tags and Red Tags or any deficiencies noted during the testing, including the required notification of the local Authority Having Jurisdiction (fire code official) shall be followed.
16. Additionally, records of the testing shall be maintained by the owner and contractor, if applicable, as required by the State Rules mentioned above and NFPA 25.
17. Standpipe system tests where water will be flowed external to the building shall not be conducted during freezing conditions or during the day prior to expected night time freezing conditions.
18. Contact the fire code official for requests to remove existing fire hose from Class II and III standpipe systems where employees are not trained in the utilization of this firefighting equipment. All standpipe hose valves must remain in place and be provided with an approved cap and chain when approval is given to remove hose by the fire code official.

*(Reason: Increases the reliability of the fire protection system and re-emphasizes the requirements of NFPA 25 relative to standpipe systems, as well as ensuring that FDC connections are similarly tested/maintained to ensure operation in an emergency incident.)*

**\*\*Section 901.6.4; add Section 901.6.4 to read as follows:**

**901.6.4 False Alarms and Nuisance Alarms.** False alarms and nuisance alarms shall not be given, signaled or transmitted or caused or permitted to be given, signaled or transmitted in any manner.

*(Reason: Places the responsibility on the business or property owner to maintain their fire alarm systems in approved condition. Allows the enforcement of "prohibition of false alarms". Replaces text lost from the legacy codes that helps to ensure the maintenance of life safety systems.)*

**\*\*Section 901.7; change to read as follows:**

**901.7 Systems Out of Service.** Where a required fire protection system is out of service or in the event of an excessive number of activations, the fire department and the fire code official shall be notified immediately and, where required by the fire code official, the building shall either be evacuated or an approved fire watch shall be provided for all occupants left unprotected by the shut down until the fire protection system has been returned to service. ... {Remaining text unchanged}

*(Reason: Gives fire code official more discretion with regards to enforcement of facilities experiencing nuisance alarm or fire protection system activations necessitating correction/repair/replacement. The intent of the amendment is to allow local jurisdictions to enforce fire watches, etc., where needed to ensure safety of occupants where fire protection systems are experiencing multiple nuisance activations.)*

**\*\*Section 903.1.1; change to read as follows:**

**903.1.1 Alternative Protection.** Alternative automatic fire-extinguishing systems complying with Section 904 shall be permitted instead of in addition to automatic sprinkler protection where recognized by the applicable standard and, or as approved by the fire code official.

*(Reason: Such alternative systems do not provide the reliability of automatic sprinkler protection. Most gaseous type systems are highly susceptible to open doors, ceiling or floor tile removal, etc. However, an*



applicant could pursue an Alternate Method request to help mitigate the reliability issues with these alternative systems with the fire code official if so desired, or there may be circumstances in which the fire code official is acceptable to allowing an alternate system in lieu of sprinklers, such as kitchen hoods or paint booths.)

**\*\*Section 903.2; add paragraph to read as follows and delete the exception:**

Automatic Sprinklers shall not be installed in elevator machine rooms, elevator machine spaces, and elevator hoistways, other than pits where such sprinklers would not necessitate shunt trip requirements under any circumstances. Storage shall not be allowed within the elevator machine room. Signage shall be provided at the entry doors to the elevator machine room indicating "ELEVATOR MACHINERY – NO STORAGE ALLOWED."

*(Reason: Firefighter and public safety. This amendment eliminates the shunt trip requirement of the International Building Code Section 3005.5 for the purpose of elevator passenger and firefighter safety. This amendment is contingent on the Building Code amendment eliminating the Exceptions to Section 3005.4, such that passive fire barriers for these areas are maintained. The exception deletion is due to the fact that such telecom areas pose an undue fire risk to the structural integrity of the building.)*

**\*\*Section 903.2.9; add Section 903.2.9.3 to read as follows:**

**903.2.9.3 Self-Service Storage Facility.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout all self-service storage facilities.

*(Reason: Fire departments are unable to inspect these commercial occupancies and are unaware of the contents being stored. Previous allowance to separate units by fire barriers is difficult to enforce maintenance after opening.)*

**\*\*Option A**

**Section 903.2.11; change 903.2.11.3 and add 903.2.11.7 and 903.2.11.8, as follows:**

**903.2.11.3 Buildings 55 Foot or more in Height.** ~~An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings that have one or more stories with an occupant load of 30 or more, other than penthouses in compliance with Section 1510 of the International Building Code, located 55 feet (16 764 mm) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, measured to the finished floor.~~

**Exceptions:**

~~1. Open parking structures in compliance with Section 406.5 of the International Building Code, having no other occupancies above the subject garage.~~

~~2. \_\_\_\_\_ Occupancies \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ Group \_\_\_\_\_ F-2.~~

**903.2.11.7 High Piled Combustible Storage.** ~~For any building with a clear height exceeding 12 feet (4572 mm), see Chapter 32 to determine if these provisions apply.~~

**903.2.11.8 Spray Booths and Rooms.** ~~New and existing spray booths and spraying rooms shall be protected by an approved automatic fire extinguishing system.~~

**\*\*Option B**

**Section 903.2.11; change 903.2.11.3 and add 903.2.11.7, 903.2.11.8, and 903.2.11.9 as follows:**

**903.2.11.3 Buildings ~~55~~ 35 feet or more in height.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings that have one or more stories ~~with an occupant load of 30 or more, other than penthouses in compliance with Section 1510 of the *International Building Code*, located ~~55~~ 35 feet (46-764 10 668 mm) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, measured to the finished floor.~~

**Exceptions:**

- 1.—Open parking structures in compliance with Section 406.5 of the *International Building Code*, having no other occupancies above the subject garage.
2. ~~Occupancies in Group F-2.~~

**903.2.11.7 High-Piled Combustible Storage.** For any building with a clear height exceeding 12 feet (4572 mm), see Chapter 32 to determine if those provisions apply.

**903.2.11.8 Spray Booths and Rooms.** New and existing spray booths and spraying rooms shall be protected by an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system.

**903.2.11.9 Buildings Over 6,000 sq. ft.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout all buildings with a building area 6,000 sq. ft. or greater and in all existing buildings that are enlarged to be 6,000 sq. ft. or greater. For the purpose of this provision, fire walls shall not define separate buildings.

**Exception:** Open parking garages in compliance with Section 406.5 of the *International Building Code*.

(Reason: Provides jurisdictions options as to their desired level of sprinkler protection based on multiple factors including firefighting philosophies/capabilities.)

**\*\*Section 903.3.1.1.1; change to read as follows:**

**903.3.1.1.1 Exempt Locations.** When approved by the fire code official, automatic sprinklers shall not be required in the following rooms or areas where such ... *{text unchanged}*... because it is damp, of fire-resistance-rated construction or contains electrical equipment.

7. Any room where the application of water, or flame and water, constitutes a serious life or fire hazard.
8. Any room or space where sprinklers are considered undesirable because of the nature of the contents, when approved by the code official.
9. Generator and transformer rooms, under the direct control of a public utility, separated from the remainder of the building by walls and floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.
- ~~10. In rooms or areas that are of noncombustible construction with wholly noncombustible contents.~~
11. ~~Fire service access~~ Elevator machine rooms, and machinery spaces, and hoistways, other than pits where such sprinklers would not necessitate shunt trip requirements under any circumstances.
12. {Delete.}

(Reason: Gives more direction to code official. Exception 4 deleted to provide protection where fire risks

are poorly addressed. Amendment 903.2 addresses Exception 5 above relative to the elimination of sprinkler protection in these areas to avoid the shunt trip requirement.)

**\*\*\*Section 903.3.1.2.3; delete section and replace as follows:**

**[F] Section 903.3.1.2.3 Attached Garages and Attics.** Sprinkler protection is required in attached garages, and in the following attic spaces:

1. Attics that are used or intended for living purposes or storage shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system.
2. Where fuel-fired equipment is installed in an unsprinklered attic, not fewer than one quick-response intermediate temperature sprinkler shall be installed above the equipment.
3. Attic spaces of buildings that are two or more stories in height above grade plane or above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
4. Group R-4, Condition 2 occupancy attics not required by Item 1 or 3 to have sprinklers shall comply with one of the following:
  - 4.1. Provide automatic sprinkler system protection.
  - 4.2. Provide a heat detection system throughout the attic that is arranged to activate the building fire alarm system.
  - 4.3. Construct the attic using noncombustible materials.
  - 4.4. Construct the attic using fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 of the International Building Code.
  - 4.5. Fill the attic with noncombustible insulation.

(Reason: Attic protection is required due to issues with fire exposure via soffit vents, as well as firefighter safety. Several jurisdictions indicated experience with un-protected attic fires resulting in displacement of all building occupants. NFPA 13 provides for applicable attic sprinkler protection requirements, as well as exemptions to such, based on noncombustible construction, etc. Attached garages already require sprinklers via NFPA 13R – this amendment just re-emphasizes the requirement.)

**\*\*Section 903.3.1.3; change to read as follows:**

**903.3.1.3 NFPA 13D Sprinkler Systems.** Automatic sprinkler systems installed in one- and two-family dwellings; Group R-3; Group R-4, Condition 1; and townhouses shall be permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13D or in accordance with state law.

(Reason: To allow the use of the Plumbing section of the International Residential Code (IRC) and recognize current state stipulations in this regard.)

**\*\*Section 903.3.1.4; add to read as follows:**

**[F] 903.3.1.4 Freeze protection.** Freeze protection systems for automatic fire sprinkler systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of the applicable referenced NFPA standard and this section.

**903.3.1.4.1 Attics.** Only dry-pipe, preaction, or listed antifreeze automatic fire sprinkler systems shall be allowed to protect attic spaces.

**Exception:** Wet-pipe fire sprinkler systems shall be allowed to protect non-ventilated attic spaces where:

4. The attic sprinklers are supplied by a separate floor control valve assembly to allow ease of draining the attic system without impairing sprinklers throughout the rest of the building, and
5. Adequate heat shall be provided for freeze protection as per the applicable referenced NFPA standard, and
6. The attic space is a part of the building's thermal, or heat, envelope, such that insulation is provided at the roof deck, rather than at the ceiling level.



**903.3.1.4.2 Heat trace/insulation.** Heat trace/insulation shall only be allowed where approved by the fire code official for small sections of large diameter water-filled pipe.

*(Reason: In the last few years, severe winters brought to light several issues with current practices for sprinklering attics, not the least of which was wet-pipe sprinklers in ventilated attics provided with space heaters, etc. for freeze protection of such piping. This practice is not acceptable for the protection of water-filled piping in a ventilated attic space as it does not provide a reliable means of maintaining the minimum 40 degrees required by NFPA, wastes energy, and presents a potential ignition source to the attic space. Listed antifreeze is specifically included because NFPA currently allows such even though there is no currently listed antifreeze at the time of development of these amendments. The intent of this amendment is to help reduce the large number of freeze breaks that have occurred in the past with water-filled wet-pipe sprinkler systems in the future, most specifically in attic spaces.)*

**\*\*Section 903.3.5; add a second paragraph to read as follows:**

Water supply as required for such systems shall be provided in conformance with the supply requirements of the respective standards; however, every water-based fire protection system shall be designed with a 10 psi safety factor. Reference Section 507.4 for additional design requirements.

*(Reason: To define uniform safety factor for the region.)*

**\*\*Section 903.4; add a second paragraph after the exceptions to read as follows:**

Sprinkler and standpipe system water-flow detectors shall be provided for each floor tap to the sprinkler system and shall cause an alarm upon detection of water flow for more than 45 seconds. All control valves in the sprinkler and standpipe systems except for fire department hose connection valves shall be electrically supervised to initiate a supervisory signal at the central station upon tampering.

*(Reason: To avoid significant water losses. Consistent with amendment to IFC 905.9.)*

**\*\*Section 903.4.2; add second paragraph to read as follows:**

The alarm device required on the exterior of the building shall be a weatherproof horn/strobe notification appliance with a minimum 75 candela strobe rating, installed as close as practicable to the fire department connection.

*(Reason: Fire department connections are not always located at the riser; this allows the fire department faster access.)*

**\*\*Section 905.2; change to read as follows:**

**905.2 Installation Standard.** Standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 14. Manual dry standpipe systems shall be supervised with a minimum of 10 psig and a maximum of 40 psig air pressure with a high/low alarm.

*(Reason: To define manual dry standpipe supervision requirements. Helps ensure the integrity of the standpipe system via supervision, such that open hose valves will result in a supervisory low air alarm.)*

**\*\*\*Section 905.3; add Section 905.3.9 and exception to read as follows:**

**905.3.9 Buildings Exceeding 10,000 sq. ft.** In buildings exceeding 10,000 square feet in area per story and where any portion of the building's interior area is more than 200 feet (60960 mm) of travel, vertically and horizontally, from the nearest point of fire department vehicle access, Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipes shall be provided.

**Exceptions:**

3. Automatic dry, semi-automatic dry, and manual dry standpipes are allowed as provided for in NFPA 14 where approved by the fire code official.
4. R-2 occupancies of four stories or less in height having no interior corridors.

*(Reason: Allows for the rapid deployment of hose lines to the body of the fire. Manual dry option added this edition.)*

**\*\*Section 905.4, change Item 1, 3, and 5, and add Item 7 to read as follows:**

1. In every required ~~interior~~-exit stairway, a hose connection shall be provided for each story above and below grade plane. Hose connections shall be located at an intermediate landing between stories, unless otherwise approved by the fire code official.
2. {No change.}
3. In every exit passageway, at the entrance from the exit passageway to other areas of a building.  
**Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to an exit passageway are reachable from an ~~interior~~ exit stairway hose connection by a {remainder of text unchanged}
4. {No change.}
5. Where the roof has a slope less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33.3-percent slope), each standpipe shall be provided with a two-way a-hose connection shall be located to serve the roof or at the highest landing of an ~~interior~~ exit stairway with stair access to the roof provided in accordance with Section 1011.12.
6. {No change.}
7. When required by this Chapter, standpipe connections shall be placed adjacent to all required exits to the structure and at two hundred feet (200') intervals along major corridors thereafter, or as otherwise approved by the fire code official.

*(Reason: Item 1, 3, and 5 amendments to remove 'interior' will help to clarify that such connections are required for all 'exit' stairways, to ensure firefighter capabilities are not diminished in these tall buildings, simply because the stair is on the exterior of the building. Item 5 reduces the amount of pressure required to facilitate testing, and provides backup protection for fire fighter safety. Item 7 allows for the rapid deployment of hose lines to the body of the fire.)*

**\*\*Section 905.9; add a second paragraph after the exceptions to read as follows:**

Sprinkler and standpipe system water-flow detectors shall be provided for each floor tap to the sprinkler system and shall cause an alarm upon detection of water flow for more than 45 seconds. All control valves in the sprinkler and standpipe systems except for fire department hose connection valves shall be electrically supervised to initiate a supervisory signal at the central station upon tampering.

*(Reason: To avoid significant water losses. Consistent with amendment to IFC 903.4.)*

**\*\*Section 907.1; add Section 907.1.4 and 907.1.4.1 to read as follows:**

**907.1.4 Design Standards.** Where a new fire alarm system is installed, the devices shall be addressable. Fire alarm systems utilizing more than 20 smoke detectors shall have analog initiating devices.

*(Reason: Provides for the ability of descriptive identification of alarms, and reduces need for panel replacement in the future. Updated wording to match the language of the new requirement at 907.5.2.3. Change of terminology allows for reference back to definitions of NFPA 72.)*

**\*\*Section 907.2.1; change to read as follows:**

**907.2.1 Group A.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in

accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group A occupancies ~~where the~~ having an occupant load ~~due to the assembly occupancy is of~~ 300 or more persons, or where the ~~Group A~~ occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the *lowest level of exit discharge*. Group A occupancies not separated from one another in accordance with Section 707.3.-10 of the *International Building Code* shall be considered as a single occupancy for the purposes of applying this section. Portions of Group E occupancies occupied for assembly purposes shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E occupancy.

**Exception:** {No change.}

Activation of fire alarm notification appliances shall:

1. Cause illumination of the *means of egress* with light of not less than 1 foot-candle (11 lux) at the walking surface level, and
2. Stop any conflicting or confusing sounds and visual distractions.

*(Reason: Increases the requirement to be consistent with Group B requirement. Also addresses issue found in Group A occupancies of reduced lighting levels and other A/V equipment that distracts from fire alarm notification devices or reduces ability of fire alarm system to notify occupants of the emergency condition.)*

**\*\*Section 907.2.3; change to read as follows:**

**907.2.3 Group E.** A manual fire alarm system that initiates the occupant notification signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm communication system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall be installed in Group E educational occupancies. When *automatic sprinkler systems* or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system. An approved smoke detection system shall be installed in Group E day care occupancies. Unless separated by a minimum of 100' open space, all buildings, whether portable buildings or the main building, will be considered one building for alarm occupant load consideration and interconnection of alarm systems.

**Exceptions:**

2. {No change.}
- 1.2. Residential In-Home day care with not more than 12 children may use interconnected single station detectors in all habitable rooms. (For care of more than five children 2 1/2 or less years of age, see Section 907.2.6.) {No change to remainder of exceptions.}

*(Reason: To distinguish educational from day care occupancy minimum protection requirements. Further, to define threshold at which portable buildings are considered a separate building for the purposes of alarm systems. Exceptions provide consistency with State law concerning such occupancies.)*

**\*\*Section 907.2.12, Exception 3; change to read as follows:**

3. Open air portions of buildings with an occupancy in Group A-5 in accordance with Section 303.1 of the *International Building Code*; however, this exception does not apply to accessory uses including but not limited to sky boxes, restaurants, and similarly enclosed areas.

*(Reason: To indicate that enclosed areas within open air seating type occupancies are not exempted from automatic fire alarm system requirements.)*

**\*\*Section 907.4.2; add Section 907.4.2.7 to read as follows:**

**907.4.2.7 Type.** Manual alarm initiating devices shall be an approved double action type.

*(Reason: Helps to reduce false alarms.)*

**\*\*Section 907.6.1; add Section 907.6.1.1 to read as follows:**

**907.6.1.1 Wiring Installation.** All fire alarm systems shall be installed in such a manner that a failure of any single initiating device or single open in an initiating circuit conductor will not interfere with the normal operation of other such devices. All signaling line circuits (SLC) shall be installed in such a way that a single open will not interfere with the operation of any addressable devices (Class A). Outgoing and return SLC conductors shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 72 requirements for Class A circuits and shall have a minimum of four feet separation horizontal and one foot vertical between supply and return circuit conductors. The initiating device circuit (IDC) from a signaling line circuit interface device may be wired Class B, provided the distance from the interface device to the initiating device is ten feet or less.

*(Reason: To provide uniformity in system specifications and guidance to design engineers. Improves reliability of fire alarm devices and systems.)*

**\*\*Section 907.6.3; delete all four Exceptions.**

*(Reason: To assist responding personnel in locating the emergency event for all fire alarm systems. This is moved from 907.6.5.3 in the 2012 IFC and reworded to match new code language and sections.)*

**\*\*Section 907.6.6; – add sentence at end of paragraph to read as follows:**

See 907.6.3 for the required information transmitted to the supervising station.

*(Reason: To assist responding personnel in locating the emergency event for all fire alarm systems. This is moved from 907.6.5.3 in the 2012 IFC and reworded to match new code language and sections.)*

**\*\*Section 909.22; add to read as follows:**

**909.22 Stairway or Ramp Pressurization Alternative.** Where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the stair pressurization alternative is chosen for compliance with Building Code requirements for a smokeproof enclosure, interior exit stairways or ramps shall be pressurized to a minimum of 0.10 inches of water (25 Pa) and a maximum of 0.35 inches of water (87 Pa) in the shaft relative to the building measured with all interior exit stairway and ramp doors closed under maximum anticipated conditions of stack effect and wind effect. Such systems shall comply with Section 909, including the installation of a separate fire-fighter's smoke control panel as per Section 909.16, and a Smoke Control Permit shall be required from the fire department as per Section 105.7.

**909.22.1 Ventilating equipment.** The activation of ventilating equipment for the stair or ramp pressurization system shall be by smoke detectors installed at each floor level at an approved location at the entrance to the smokeproof enclosure. When the closing device for the stairway or ramp shaft and vestibule doors is activated by smoke detection or power failure, the mechanical equipment shall activate and operate at the required performance levels. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.3.

**909.22.1.1 Ventilation Systems.** Smokeproof enclosure ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems. The equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall comply with one of the following:

1. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and directly connected to the smokeproof enclosure or connected to the smokeproof enclosure by ductwork enclosed by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the Building Code or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the Building Code, or both.
2. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located within the smokeproof

enclosure with intake or exhaust directly from and to the outside or through ductwork enclosed by not less than 2-hour barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the Building Code or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the Building Code, or both.

3. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located within the building if separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the Building Code or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the Building Code, or both.

**Exceptions:**

1. Control wiring and power wiring utilizing a 2-hour rated cable or cable system.
2. Where encased with not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete.
3. Control wiring and power wiring protected by a listed electrical circuit protective systems with a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

**909.21.1.2 Standby Power.** Mechanical vestibule and stairway and ramp shaft ventilation systems and automatic fire detection systems shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702 of the Building Code.

**909.22.1.3 Acceptance and Testing.** Before the mechanical equipment is approved, the system shall be tested in the presence of the fire code official to confirm that the system is operating in compliance with these requirements.

*(Reason: To assist with enforcement of such as a smoke control system, as per Section 909.6.3, especially since a permit is now specifically required for such systems in the Fire Code. Also ensures that a firefighter's override panel is provided as per 909.16 for such systems. The above amendment copies the applicable requirements for such systems from Section 909.20 of the Building Code into the Fire Code. Although the published code did copy the elevator pressurization requirements into the Fire Code, it did not copy over the stair pressurization requirements.)*

**\*\*Section 910.2; change Exception 2. and 3.to read as follows:**

2. Only manual smoke and heat removal shall ~~not~~ be required in areas of buildings equipped with early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers. Automatic smoke and heat removal is prohibited.
3. Only manual smoke and heat removal shall ~~not~~ be required in areas of buildings equipped with control mode special application sprinklers with a response time index of  $50(m^*S)^{1/2}$  or less that are listed to control a fire in stored commodities with 12 or fewer sprinklers. Automatic smoke and heat removal is prohibited.

*(Reason: Allows the fire department to control the smoke and heat during and after a fire event, while still prohibiting such systems from being automatically activated, which is a potential detriment to the particular sprinkler systems indicated.)*

**\*\*Section 910.2; add subsections 910.2.3 with exceptions to read as follows:**

**910.2.3 Group H.** Buildings and portions thereof used as a Group H occupancy as follows:

1. In occupancies classified as Group H-2 or H-3, any of which are more than 15,000 square feet (1394 m<sup>2</sup>) in single floor area.

**Exception:** Buildings of noncombustible construction containing only noncombustible materials.

2. In areas of buildings in Group H used for storing Class 2, 3, and 4 liquid and solid oxidizers,

Class 1 and unclassified detonable organic peroxides, Class 3 and 4 unstable (reactive) materials, or Class 2 or 3 water-reactive materials as required for a high-hazard commodity classification.

**Exception:** Buildings of noncombustible construction containing only noncombustible materials.

*(Reason: Maintains a fire protection device utilized in such occupancies where it is sometimes necessary to allow chemicals to burn out, rather than extinguish.)*

**\*\*Section 910.3; add section 910.3.4 to read as follows:**

**910.3.4 Vent Operation.** Smoke and heat vents shall be capable of being operated by approved automatic and manual means. Automatic operation of smoke and heat vents shall conform to the provisions of Sections 910.3.2.1 through 910.3.2.3.

**910.3.4.1 Sprinklered buildings.** Where installed in buildings equipped with an approved automatic sprinkler system, smoke and heat vents shall be designed to operate automatically. The automatic operating mechanism of the smoke and heat vents shall operate at a temperature rating at least 100 degrees F (approximately 38 degrees Celsius) greater than the temperature rating of the sprinklers installed.

**Exception:** Manual only systems per Section 910.2.

**910.3.4.2 Nonsprinklered Buildings.** Where installed in buildings not equipped with an approved automatic sprinkler system, smoke and heat vents shall operate automatically by actuation of a heat-responsive device rated at between 100°F (56°C) and 220°F (122°C) above ambient.

**Exception:** Listed gravity-operated drop out vents.

*(Reason: Amendment continues to keep applicable wording from prior to the 2012 edition of the IFC. Specifically, automatic activation criteria is no longer specifically required in the published code. Specifying a temperature range at which smoke and heat vents should activate in sprinklered buildings helps to ensure that the sprinkler system has an opportunity to activate and control the fire prior to vent operation.)*

**\*\*Section 910.4.3.1; change to read as follows:**

**910.4.3.1 Makeup Air.** Makeup air openings shall be provided within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the floor level. Operation of makeup air openings shall be ~~manual or~~ automatic. The minimum gross area of makeup air inlets shall be 8 square feet per 1,000 cubic feet per minute (0.74 m<sup>2</sup> per 0.4719 m<sup>3</sup>/s) of smoke exhaust.

*(Reason: Makeup air has been required to be automatic for several years now in this region when mechanical smoke exhaust systems are proposed. This allows such systems to be activated from the smoke control panel by first responders without having to physically go around the exterior of the building opening doors manually. Such requires a significant number of first responders on scene to conduct this operation and significantly delays activation and/or capability of the smoke exhaust system.)*

**~~\*\*Section 912.2; add Section 912.2.3 to read as follows:~~**

**912.2.3 Hydrant Distance.** An approved fire hydrant shall be located within 100 feet of the fire department connection as the fire hose lays along an unobstructed path.

*(Reason: To accommodate limited hose lengths, improve response times where the FDC is needed to achieve fire control, and improve ease of locating a fire hydrant in those situations also. Also, consistent with NFPA 14 criteria.)*



**\*\*Section 913.2.1; add second paragraph and exception to read as follows:**

When located on the ground level at an exterior wall, the fire pump room shall be provided with an exterior fire department access door that is not less than 3 ft. in width and 6 ft. – 8 in. in height, regardless of any interior doors that are provided. A key box shall be provided at this door, as required by Section 506.1.

**Exception:** When it is necessary to locate the fire pump room on other levels or not at an exterior wall, the corridor leading to the fire pump room access from the exterior of the building shall be provided with equivalent fire resistance as that required for the pump room, or as approved by the fire code official. Access keys shall be provided in the key box as required by Section 506.1.

*(Reason: This requirement allows fire fighters safer access to the fire pump room. The requirement allows access without being required to enter the building and locate the fire pump room interior access door during a fire event. The exception recognizes that this will not always be a feasible design scenario for some buildings, and as such, provides an acceptable alternative to protect the pathway to the fire pump room.)*

**\*\*Section 914.3.1.2; change to read as follows:**

**914.3.1.2 Water Supply to required Fire Pumps.** In buildings that are more than ~~420~~ 120 feet (37 m) in building height, required fire pumps shall be supplied by connections to no fewer than two water mains located in different streets. Separate supply piping shall be provided between each connection to the water main and the pumps. Each connection and the supply piping between the connection and the pumps shall be sized to supply the flow and pressure required for the pumps to operate.

**Exception:** {No change to exception.}

*(Reason: The 2009 edition of the IFC added this requirement based on a need for redundancy of the water supply similar to the redundancy of the power supply to the fire pumps required for such tall buildings, partially due to the fact that these buildings are rarely fully evacuated in a fire event. More commonly, the alarm activates on the floor of the event, the floor above and the floor below. Back-up power to the fire pump becomes critical for this reason. Certainly, the power is pointless if the water supply is impaired for any reason, so a similar requirement is provided here for redundant water supplies. The 2015 edition changes the requirement to only apply to very tall buildings over 420 ft. This amendment modifies/lowers the requirement to 120 ft., based on this same height requirement for fire service access elevators. Again, the language from the 2009 and 2012 editions of the code applied to any high-rise building. This compromise at 120 ft. is based on the above technical justification of defend-in-place scenarios in fire incidents in such tall structures.)*

**\*\*Section 1006.2.2.7; Add Section 1006.2.2.7 as follows:**

**1006.2.2.7 Electrical Rooms.** For electrical rooms, special exiting requirements may apply. Reference the electrical code as adopted.

*(Reason: Cross reference necessary for coordination with the NEC which has exiting requirements as well.)*

**\*\*Section 1009.8; add the following Exception 7:**

Exceptions:

7. Buildings regulated under State Law and built in accordance with State registered plans, including variances or waivers granted by the State, shall be deemed to be in compliance with the requirements of

Section 1009 and chapter 11.

*(Reason: To accommodate buildings regulated under Texas State Law and to be consistent with amendments in Chapter 11.)*

**\*\*Section 1010.1.9.5 Bolt Locks; amend exceptions 3 and 4 as follows:**

Exceptions:

3. Where a pair of doors serves an occupant load of less than 50 persons in a Group B, F, M or S occupancy. (Remainder unchanged)

4. Where a pair of doors serves a Group A, B, F, M or S occupancy (remainder unchanged)

*(Reason: Application to M occupancies reflects regional practice; No. 4 expanded to Group A due to it being a similar scenario to other uses; No. 4 was regional practice.)*

**\*\*Section 1020.1 Construction; add exception 6 to read as follows:**

6. In group B occupancies, corridor walls and ceilings need not be of fire-resistive construction within a single tenant space when the space is equipped with approved automatic smoke-detection within the corridor. The actuation of any detector must activate self-annunciating alarms audible in all areas within the corridor. Smoke detectors must be connected to an approved automatic fire alarm system where such system is provided.

*(Reason: Regionally accepted alternate method.)*

**\*\*Section 1029.1.1.1 Spaces under grandstands and bleachers; delete this section.**

*(Reason: Unenforceable.)*

**\*\*Section 1031.2; change to read as follows:**

**1031.2 Reliability.** Required *exit accesses, exits and exit discharges* shall be continuously maintained free from obstructions or impediments to full instant use in the case of fire or other emergency ~~where the building area served by the means of egress is occupied~~. An *exit or exit passageway* shall not be used for any purpose that interferes with a means of egress.

*(Reason: Maintain legacy levels of protection and long-standing regional practice, and provide firefighter safety.)*

**\*\*Section 1103.3; add sentence to end of paragraph as follows:**

Provide emergency signage as required by Section 606.3.

*(Reason: Coordinates requirements of previous amendment.)*

**\*\*\*Section 1103.5.1: add sentence to read as follows:**

***Fire sprinkler system installation shall be completed within 24 months from date of notification by the fire code official.***

*(Reason: Regional consistency of this retroactive requirement to allow business owners adequate time to budget to accommodate the cost of the fire sprinkler system.)*

**\*\*Section 1103.5; add Section 1103.5.5 to read as follows:**

**1103.5.5 Spray Booths and Rooms.** Existing spray booths and spray rooms shall be protected by an



approved automatic fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Section 2404.

*(Reason: Consistent with amendment to IFC 2404, and long-standing regional requirement to protect this hazardous operation.)*

**\*\*\*Section 1103.7; add Section 1103.7.7 and 1103.7.7.1 to read as follows:**

**1103.7.7 Fire Alarm System Design Standards.** Where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, the devices shall be addressable. Fire alarm systems utilizing more than 20 smoke and/or heat detectors shall have analog initiating devices.

**Exception:** Existing systems need not comply unless the total building, or fire alarm system, remodel or expansion exceeds 30% of the building. When cumulative building, or fire alarm system, remodel or expansion initiated after the date of original fire alarm panel installation exceeds 50% of the building, or fire alarm system, the fire alarm system must comply within 18 months of permit application.

**1103.7.7.1 Communication requirements.** Refer to Section 907.6.6 for applicable requirements.

*(Reason: To assist responding personnel in locating the emergency event and provide clarity as to percentages of work that results in a requirement to upgrade the entire fire alarm system.)*

**\*\*\*Section 1203; change and add to read as follows:**

**1203.1.1** {No change.}

**1203.1.2** {No change.}

**1203.1.3** Emergency power systems and standby power systems shall be installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*, NFPA 70, NFPA 110 and NFPA 111. Existing installations shall be maintained in accordance with the original approval, except as specified in Chapter 11.

**1203.1.4 through 1203.1.9** {No changes to these sections.}

**1203.1.10 Critical Operations Power Systems (COPS).** For Critical Operations Power Systems necessary to maintain continuous power supply to facilities or parts of facilities that require continuous operation for the reasons of public safety, emergency management, national security, or business continuity, see NFPA 70.

**1203.2 Where Required.** Emergency and standby power systems shall be provided where required by Sections 1203.2.1 through 1203.2.4~~826~~ or elsewhere identified in this code or any other referenced code.

**1203.2.1 through 1203.2.3** {No change.}

**1203.2.4 Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications Systems.** Emergency power shall be provided for emergency voice/alarm communications systems in the following occupancies, or as specified elsewhere in this code, as required in Section 907.5.2.2.5. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 24 hours, as required in NFPA 72.

Covered and Open Malls, Section 907.2.19 and 914.2.3

Group A Occupancies, Sections 907.2.1 and 907.5.2.2.4.

Special Amusement Buildings, Section 907.2.11

High-rise Buildings, Section 907.2.12

Atriums, Section 907.2.13

Deep Underground Buildings, Section 907.2.18

**1203.2.5 through 1203.2.13** {No change.}

**1203.2.14 Means of Egress Illumination.** Emergency power shall be provided for *means of egress* illumination in accordance with Sections 1008.3 and 1104.5.1. (90 minutes)

**1203.2.15 Membrane Structures.** Emergency power shall be provided for exit signs in temporary tents and membrane structures in accordance with Section 3103.12.6. (90 minutes) Standby power shall be provided for auxiliary inflation systems in permanent membrane structures in accordance with Section 2702 of the *International Building Code*. (4 hours) Auxiliary inflation systems shall be provided in temporary air-supported and air-inflated membrane structures in accordance with section 3103.10.4.

**1203.2.16** {No change.}

**1203.2.17 Smoke Control Systems.** Standby power shall be provided for smoke control systems in the following occupancies, or as specified elsewhere in this code, as required in Section 909.11:

Covered Mall Building, International Building Code, Section 402.7

Atriums, International Building Code, Section 404.7

Underground Buildings, International Building Code, Section 405.8

Group I-3, International Building Code, Section 408.4.2

Stages, International Building Code, Section 410.2.5

Special Amusement Buildings (as applicable to Group A's), International Building Code, Section 411.1

Smoke Protected Seating, Section 1029.6.2.

**1203.2.18** {No change.}

**1203.2.19 Covered and Open Mall Buildings.** Emergency power shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.19 and 914.2.3.

**1203.2.20 Airport Traffic Control Towers.** A standby power system shall be provided in airport traffic control towers more than 65 ft. in height. Power shall be provided to the following equipment:

1. Pressurization equipment, mechanical equipment and lighting.

2. Elevator operating equipment.

3. Fire alarm and smoke detection systems.

**1203.2.21 Smokeproof Enclosures and Stair Pressurization Alternative.** Standby power shall be provided for smokeproof enclosures, stair pressurization alternative and associated automatic fire detection systems as required by the International Building Code, Section 909.20.6.2.

**1203.2.22 Elevator Pressurization.** Standby power shall be provided for elevator pressurization system as required by the International Building Code, Section 909.21.5.

**1203.2.23 Elimination of Smoke Dampers in Shaft Penetrations.** Standby power shall be provided when eliminating the smoke dampers in ducts penetrating shafts in accordance with the International Building Code, Section 717.5.3, exception 2.3.

**1203.2.24 Common Exhaust Systems for Clothes Dryers.** Standby power shall be provided for common exhaust systems for clothes dryers located in multistory structures in accordance with the International Mechanical Code, Section 504.10, Item 7.

**1203.2.25 Hydrogen Cutoff Rooms.** Standby power shall be provided for mechanical ventilation and gas detection systems of Hydrogen Cutoff Rooms in accordance with the International Building Code, Section 421.

**1203.2.26 Means of Egress Illumination in Existing Buildings.** Emergency power shall be provided for means of egress illumination in accordance with Section 1104.5 when required by the fire code official. (90 minutes in I-2, 60 minutes elsewhere.)

**1203.3 through 1203.6** {No change.}

**1203.7 Energy Time Duration.** Unless a time limit is specified by the fire code official, in this chapter or elsewhere in this code, or in any other referenced code or standard, the emergency and standby power system shall be supplied with enough fuel or energy storage capacity for not less than 2-hour full-demand operation of the system.

**Exception:** Where the system is supplied with natural gas from a utility provider and is approved.

*(Reason: These amendments were moved from Chapter 6, due to relocation of the published sections to this new Chapter 12. These provisions provide a list to complete and match that throughout the codes. The only additional requirements are the reference to COPS in NFPA 70, and the specified Energy time duration. Other changes are a reference to a code provision that already exists.)*

**\*\*Section 2304.1; change to read as follows:**

**2304.1 Supervision of Dispensing.** The dispensing of fuel at motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be conducted by a qualified attendant or shall be under the supervision of a qualified attendant at all times or shall be in accordance with Section 2204.3: the following:

1. Conducted by a qualified attendant; and/or,
2. Shall be under the supervision of a qualified attendant; and/or
3. Shall be an unattended self-service facility in accordance with Section 2304.3.

At any time the qualified attendant of item Number 1 or 2 above is not present, such operations shall be considered as an unattended self-service facility and shall also comply with Section 2304.3.

*(Reason: Allows a facility to apply the attended and unattended requirements of the code when both are potentially applicable.)*

**\*\*Section 2401.2; delete this section.**

*(Reason: This section eliminates such booths from all compliance with Chapter 15 including, but not limited to: size, ventilation, fire protection, construction, etc. If the product utilized is changed to a more flammable substance, the lack of compliance with Chapter 15 could result in significant fire or deflagration and subsequent life safety hazard.)*

**\*\*\*Section 3103.3.1; delete this section.**

*(Reason: This new section of the Fire Code requires a fire sprinkler system to be installed in temporary tents and membrane structures, which is not a reasonable or enforceable requirement for a temporary use. A fire watch or fire alarm system is a more advisable approach for such occupancies that are only temporary.)*

**\*\*Table 3206.2, footnote h; change text to read as follows:**

~~h. Not required~~ Where storage areas are protected by either early suppression fast response (ESFR) sprinkler systems or control mode special application sprinklers with a response time index of 50 (m • s) 1/2 or less that are listed to control a fire in the stored commodities with 12 or fewer sprinklers, installed in accordance with NFPA 13, manual smoke and heat vents or manually activated engineered mechanical smoke exhaust systems shall be required within these areas.

*(Reason: Allows the fire department to control the smoke and heat during and after a fire event, while ensuring proper operation of the sprinkler protection provided. Also, gives an alternative to smoke and heat vents.)*

**\*\*\*Table 3206.2, footnote j; add footnote j to row titled 'High Hazard' and 'Greater than 300,000' to read as follows:**

j. High hazard high-piled storage areas shall not exceed 500,000 square feet. A 2-hour fire wall constructed in accordance with Section 706 of the *International Building Code* shall be used to divide high-piled storage exceeding 500,000 square feet in area.

*(Reason: This is a long-standing legacy requirement and provides passive protection for extremely large buildings where it would be otherwise impossible to control the spread of fire without the fire wall in place in an uncontrolled fire event, which is much more likely in high hazard commodities, such as tires, flammable liquids, expanded plastics, etc.)*

**\*\*Section 3310.1; add sentence to end of paragraph to read as follows:**

When fire apparatus access roads are required to be installed for any structure or development, they shall be approved prior to the time at which construction has progressed beyond completion of the foundation of any structure.

*(Reason: Reference requirement of Section 501.4.)*

**~~\*\*Section 5601.1.3; change to read as follows:~~**

**~~5601.1.3 Fireworks.~~** ~~The possession, manufacture, storage, sale, handling, and use of fireworks are prohibited.~~

**~~Exceptions:~~**

- ~~1. Only when approved for fireworks displays, storage, and handling of fireworks as allowed in Section 5604 and 5608.~~
- ~~2. Manufacture, assembly and testing of fireworks as allowed in Section 5605.~~
- ~~3. The use of fireworks for approved fireworks displays as allowed in Section 5608.~~
- ~~4. The possession, storage, sale... *{Delete remainder of text.}*~~

*~~(Reason: Restricts fireworks to approved displays only, which is consistent with regional practice. Such is intended to help protect property owners and individuals from unintentional fireworks fires within the jurisdiction, as well as to help protect individuals from fireworks injuries. It is noted that there has been a change in the State Law to allow possession of unopened fireworks in certain areas of the vehicle, and it is highly recommended that AHJ's familiarize themselves with the applicable State Laws in this regard.)~~*

**\*\*Section 5703.6; add a sentence to read as follows:**

**5703.6 Piping Systems.** Piping systems, and their component parts, for flammable and combustible liquids shall be in accordance with Sections 5703.6.1 through 5703.6.11. An approved method of secondary containment shall be provided for underground tank and piping systems.

*(Reason: Increased protection in response to underground leak problems and remediation difficulty in underground applications. Coordinates with TCEQ requirements.)*

**\*\*Section 5704.2.11.4; add a sentence to read as follows:**

5704.2.11.4 Leak Prevention. **Leak prevention for underground tanks shall comply with Sections 5704.2.11.4.1 and 5704.2.11.4.2 through 5704.2.11.4.3. An approved method of secondary containment shall be provided for underground tank and piping systems.**

*(Reason: Increased protection in response to underground leak problems and remediation difficulty in underground applications.)*

**\*\*Section 5704.2.11.4.2; change to read as follows:**

**5704.2.11.4.2 Leak Detection.** Underground storage tank systems shall be provided with an *approved* method of leak detection from any component of the system that is designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 30 and as specified in Section 5704.2.11.4.3.

*(Reason: Reference to IFC Section 5704.2.11.4.3 amendment.)*

**\*\*Section 5704.2.11.4.3; add Section 5704.2.11.4.3 to read as follows:**

**5704.2.11.4.3 Observation Wells.** Approved sampling tubes of a minimum 4 inches in diameter shall be installed in the backfill material of each underground flammable or combustible liquid storage tank. The tubes shall extend from a point 12 inches below the average grade of the excavation to ground level and shall be provided with suitable surface access caps. Each tank site shall provide a sampling tube at the corners of the excavation with a minimum of 4 tubes. Sampling tubes shall be placed in the product line excavation within 10 feet of the tank excavation and one every 50 feet routed along product lines towards the dispensers, a minimum of two are required.

*(Reason: Provides an economical means of checking potential leaks at each tank site.)*

**\*\*Section 5707.4; add paragraph to read as follows:**

Mobile fueling sites shall be restricted to commercial, industrial, governmental, or manufacturing, where the parking area having such operations is primarily intended for employee vehicles. Mobile fueling shall be conducted for fleet fueling or employee vehicles only, not the general public. Commercial sites shall be restricted to office-type or similar occupancies that are not primarily intended for use by the public.

*(Reason: The general public does not expect a hazardous operation to be occurring in a typical parking lot or for a fuel truck to be traversing such parking lot, temporarily fueling a vehicle, and moving on to the next area in the parking lot to fuel the next vehicle. Vehicular accidents occur in parking lots on a regular basis, but the presence of a fuel truck, especially one in the process of fueling a vehicle with gasoline, greatly adds to the potential risk involved in such accidents. By restricting such operations to the occupancies in question, the employees of the business may be adequately notified to expect such operations to occur in the parking lot.)*

**\*\*Section 6103.2.1; add Section 6103.2.1.8 to read as follows:**

**6103.2.1.8 Jewelry Repair, Dental Labs and Similar Occupancies.** Where natural gas service is not available, portable LP-Gas containers are allowed to be used to supply approved torch assemblies or similar appliances. Such containers shall not exceed 20-pound (9.0 kg) water capacity. Aggregate capacity shall not exceed 60-pound (27.2 kg) water capacity. Each device shall be separated from other containers by a distance of not less than 20 feet.

*(Reason: To provide a consistent and reasonable means of regulating the use of portable LP-Gas containers in these situations. Reduces the hazard presented by portable containers when natural gas is already available. Please note that current State Law does not allow for the enforcement of any rules more stringent than that adopted by the State, so this amendment is only applicable as to the extent allowed by that State Law.)*

**\*\*Section 6104.2, Exception; add an exception 2 to read as follows:**

**Exceptions:**

1. {existing text unchanged}
2. Except as permitted in Sections 308 and 6104.3.2, LP-gas containers are not permitted in residential areas.

*(Reason: To provide a consistent and reasonable means of regulating the use LP-Gas containers. Reduces the hazard presented by such containers when natural gas is already available. References regional amendment to IFC 6104.3.2. Please note that current State Law does not allow for the enforcement of any rules more stringent than that adopted by the State, so this amendment is only applicable as to the extent allowed by that State Law.)*

**\*\*Section 6104.3; add Section 6104.3.3 to read as follows:**

**6104.3.3 Spas, Pool Heaters, and Other Listed Devices.** Where natural gas service is not available, an LP-gas container is allowed to be used to supply spa and pool heaters or other listed devices. Such container shall not exceed 250-gallon water capacity per lot. See Table 6104.3 for location of containers.

**Exception:** Lots where LP-gas can be off-loaded wholly on the property where the tank is located may install up to 500 gallon above ground or 1,000 gallon underground approved containers.

*(Reason: Allows for an alternate fuel source. Dwelling density must be considered and possibly factored into zoning restrictions. Reduces the hazard presented by over-sized LP-Gas containers. Please note that current State Law does not allow for the enforcement of any rules more stringent than that adopted by the State, so this amendment is only applicable as to the extent allowed by that State Law.)*

**\*\*Section 6107.4 and 6109.13; change to read as follows:**

**6107.4 Protecting Containers from Vehicles.** Where exposed to vehicular damage due to proximity to alleys, driveways or parking areas, LP-gas containers, regulators and piping shall be protected in accordance with ~~NFPA 58~~ Section 312.

**6109.13 Protection of Containers.** LP-gas containers shall be stored within a suitable enclosure or otherwise protected against tampering. Vehicle impact protection shall be provided as required by Section 6107.4.

**Exception:** ~~Vehicle impact protection shall not be required for protection of LP-gas containers where the containers are kept in lockable, ventilated cabinets of metal construction.~~

*(Reason: NFPA 58 does not provide substantial physical protection [it allows raised sidewalks, fencing, ditches, parking bumpers as 'vehicle barrier protection'] of the container(s) from vehicular impact as is required and has been required historically, as per Section 312, i.e. bollard protection. Further, the exception to Section 6109.13 would allow for portable containers in ventilated metal cabinets to not require any physical protection whatsoever from vehicular impact, regardless of the location of the containers. Please note that current State Law does not allow for the enforcement of any rules more stringent than that adopted by the State, so this amendment is only applicable as to the extent allowed by that State Law.)*

**\*\* {Applicable to those jurisdictions adopting Appendix B}  
Table B105.2; change footnote a. to read as follows:**

a. The reduced fire-flow shall be not less than ~~4,000~~ 1,500 gallons per minute.

*(Reason: The minimum fire-flow of 1,500 gpm for other than one- and two- family dwellings has existed since the 2000 edition of the IFC, as well as the Uniform Fire Code before that. Little to no technical justification was provided for the proposed code change at the code hearings. The board believes that the already-allowed 75 percent reduction in required fire-flow for the provision of sprinkler protection is already a significant trade-off. The minimum 1,500 gpm is not believed to be overly stringent for the vast majority of public water works systems in this region, especially since it has existed as the requirement for so many years. Further, the continued progression of trading off more and more requirements in the codes for the provision of sprinkler protection has made these systems extremely operation-critical to the*



safety of the occupants and properties in question. In other words, should the sprinkler system fail for any reason, the fire-flow requirements drastically increase from that anticipated with a sprinkler-controlled fire scenario.)

**END**

Recommended Amendments to the  
**2017 National Electrical Code**  
North Central Texas Council of Governments

The following articles, paragraphs, and sentences of the *2017 National Electrical Code (NEC)* are hereby amended as follows: Standard type is text from the NEC. Highlighted with gray shading is text inserted. Lined through type is deleted text from NEC. A double asterisk (\*\*) at the beginning of an article identifies an amendment carried over from the 2014 edition of the code and a triple asterisk (\*\*\*) identifies a new or revised amendment with the 2017 code.

**\*\*Article 100; add the following to definitions:**

Engineering Supervision. Supervision by a Qualified State of Texas Licensed Professional Engineer engaged primarily in the design or maintenance of electrical installations.

*(REASON FOR CHANGE: To better define the qualifications for engineering supervision. This term is used twenty four times in the 2017 National Electrical Code.)*

**\*\*\*Article 100; remove the amendment to the following definition:**

**Intersystem Bonding Termination.** A device that provides a means for connecting intersystem bonding conductors for communication systems and other systems such as metallic gas piping systems to the grounding electrode system. Bonding conductors for other systems shall not be larger than 6 AWG.

*(REASON FOR CHANGE: Remove the above amendment. Updates to the 2017 National Electrical Code Article 250.94(A) only accommodate connecting communication systems to an intersystem bonding termination device, but Article 250.94(B) provides an alternative or other means. To allow for a termination point for other bonding conductors in addition to communication systems that are required by the*

~~various model codes. 6 AWG was chosen to coincide with the minimum size of bonding conductor required to the intersystem bonding jumper.)~~

**\*\*Article 110.2; change the following to read as follows:**

**110.2 Approval.** The conductors and equipment required or permitted by this Code shall be acceptable only if approved. Approval of equipment may be evident by listing and labeling of equipment by a Nationally Recognized Testing Lab (NRTL) with a certification mark of that laboratory or a qualified third party inspection agency approved by the AHJ.

*Exception: Unlisted equipment that is relocated to another location within a jurisdiction or is field modified is subject to the approval by the AHJ. This approval may be by a field evaluation by a NRTL or qualified third party inspection agency approved by the AHJ.*

~~Manufacturer's self-certification of any equipment shall not be used as a basis for approval by the AHJ.~~

Informational Note No. 1: See 90.7, Examination of Equipment for Safety, and 110.3, Examination, Identification, Installation, and Use of Equipment. See definitions of *Approved*, *Identified*, *Labeled*, and *Listed*.

Informational Note No. 2: Manufacturer's self-certification of equipment may not necessarily comply with U.S. product safety standards as certified by an NRTL.

Informational Note No. 3: National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 790 and 791 provide an example of an approved method for qualifying a third party inspection agency.

*(REASON FOR CHANGE: To add clarity and provide more positive options for enforcement and approval of unlisted equipment.)*

**\*\*\*Article 210.52(G) (1) Garages: remove the amendment that deleted the following:**

**(1) Garages.** In each attached garage and in each detached garage with electric power. ~~The branch circuit supplying this receptacle(s) shall not supply outlets outside of the garage.~~ At least one receptacle outlet shall be installed for each car space.

---



~~(REASON FOR CHANGE: Installations in compliance with this Code are not necessarily efficient, convenient, or adequate for good service or future expansion of electrical use.)~~

(REASON FOR CHANGE: Updates to this section in the 2017 National Electrical Code provided relief by removing "shall not supply outlets outside of the garage.")

**\*\*\*Article 230.71(A); remove the amendment that added the following exception:**

~~Exception: Multi-occupant buildings. Individual service disconnecting means is limited to six for each occupant. The number of individual disconnects at one location may exceed six.~~

~~(REASON FOR CHANGE: This is currently the accepted installation practice of the region. No noteworthy complaints have surfaced. It is more reasonable than the current NEC requirements. It allows more than six disconnects grouped at one location. This also allows designers more flexibility in the placement of electrical meters and main service disconnects.)~~

(REASON FOR CHANGE: This is below the minimum standard of the 2017 National Electrical Code adopted by the State of Texas.)

**\*\*\*Article 300.11; remove the amendment that added the following exception:**

~~Exception: Ceiling grid support wires may be used for structural supports when the associated wiring is located in that area, not more than two raceways or cables supported per wire, with a maximum nominal metric designation 16 (trade size 1/2").~~

~~(REASON FOR CHANGE: To provide limited support of raceways and cables by ceiling grid support wire.)~~

(REASON FOR CHANGE: This is below the minimum standard of the 2017 National Electrical Code adopted by the State of Texas.)

**\*\*\*Article 310.15(B) (7); remove the amendment that changed the following to read as follows:**

---

~~(7) This Article shall not be used in conjunction with 220.82.~~

~~(REASON FOR CHANGE: 310.15(B) (7) has been revised and the table has been deleted.)~~

~~(REASON FOR CHANGE: Upon review of the 2014 and 2017 code-making panel 6 and in conjunction with the wire manufacturing industry, based on the diversification of loads in modern construction, this amendment becomes irrelevant.)~~

**\*\*Article 500.8 (A) (3); change to read as follows:**

**500.8 Equipment.**

Articles 500 through 504 require equipment construction and installation that ensure safe performance under conditions of proper use and maintenance.

Informational Note No. 1: It is important that inspection authorities and users exercise more than ordinary care with regard to installation and maintenance.

Informational Note No. 2: Since there is no consistent relationship between explosion properties and ignition temperature, the two are independent requirements.

Informational Note No. 3: Low ambient conditions require special consideration. Explosion proof or dust-ignition proof equipment may not be suitable for use at temperatures lower than -25°C (-13°F) unless they are identified for low-temperature service. However, at low ambient temperatures, flammable concentrations of vapors may not exist in a location classified as Class I, Division 1 at normal ambient temperature.

**(A) Suitability.** Suitability of identified equipment shall be determined by one of the following:

- (1) Equipment listing or labeling;
- (2) Evidence of equipment evaluation from a qualified testing laboratory or inspection agency concerned with product evaluation; or,
- (3) Evidence acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction such as a manufacturer's self-evaluation or an owner's engineering judgment. ~~an engineering judgment signed and sealed by a qualified Registered licensed Professional Engineer in the State of Texas.~~

Informational Note: Additional documentation for equipment may include certificates demonstrating compliance with applicable equipment standards, indicating special conditions of use, and other pertinent information.

*(REASON FOR CHANGE: Carry over from previous amendment with change to better*

---

*define the qualifications for an engineering judgment.)*

**\*\*Article 505.7 (A) changed to read as follows:**

**505.7 Special Precaution.**

Article 505 requires equipment construction and installation that ensures safe performance under conditions of proper use and maintenance.

Informational Note No. 1: It is important that inspection authorities and users exercise more than ordinary care with regard to the installation and maintenance of electrical equipment in hazardous (classified) locations.

Informational Note No. 2: Low ambient conditions require special consideration. Electrical equipment depending on the protection techniques described by 505.8(A) may not be suitable for use at temperatures lower than -20°C (-4°F) unless they are identified for use at lower temperatures. However, at low ambient temperatures, flammable concentrations of vapors may not exist in a location classified Class I, Zones 0, 1, or 2 at normal ambient temperature.

- (A) **Implementation of Zone Classification System.** Classification of areas, engineering and design, selection of equipment and wiring methods, installation, and inspection shall be performed by a qualified persons Registered licensed Professional Engineer in the State of Texas.

*(REASON FOR CHANGE: Carry over from previous amendment with change to better define the qualifications for an engineering judgment.)*

**\*\*\*Article 517.30 Essential Electrical Systems for Hospitals; remove the amendment that created a new (H) and added the following language:**

**(G) Coordination.** Overcurrent protective devices serving the equipment branch of the essential electrical system shall be coordinated for the period of time that a fault's duration extends beyond 0.1 second.

Exception No. 1: Between transformer primary and secondary overcurrent protective devices, where only one overcurrent protective device or set of overcurrent protective devices exists on the transformer secondary.

Exception No. 2: Between overcurrent protective devices of the same size (ampere rating) in series.

Informational Note: The terms coordination and coordinated as used in this section do not cover the full range of overcurrent conditions.

~~(H) Selective Coordination.~~ Overcurrent protective devices serving the life safety, and critical branches of the essential electrical system shall be selectively coordinated with all supply-side overcurrent protective devices.

~~Exception No. 1: Between transformer primary and secondary overcurrent protective devices, where only one overcurrent protective device or set of overcurrent protective devices exists on the transformer secondary.~~

~~Exception No. 2: Between overcurrent protective devices of the same size (ampere rating) in series.~~

~~Informational Note: The terms coordination and coordinated as used in this section do not cover the full range of overcurrent conditions.~~

~~(REASON FOR CHANGE: Changes made by deleting the definition of emergency systems in Article 517 Health Care Facilities and removing emergency systems as “Essential Electrical Systems for Hospitals in 517.30(B) (2), plus the new addition of section 517.30(G) for “Coordination” instead of using selective coordination, has diminished the reliability of the “Life Safety and Critical Branches of the Essential Electrical System” to deliver power to vital loads. By providing only “coordination,” the instantaneous portion of the time-current curve has been eliminated from the overcurrent device settings.)~~

~~(REASON FOR CHANGE: Due to no action by the 2017 code-making panel 15 and NFPA 99, this amendment is not applicable.)~~

**\*\*\*Article 600.6(A) (1) At Point of Entry to a Sign; Exception 1 changed to read as follows:**

Exception No.1: A disconnect shall not be required for branch circuits(s) or feeder conductor(s) passing through the sign where enclosed in a Chapter 3 listed raceway or metal-jacketed cable identified for the location. The conductor(s) shall not serve the sign body or sign enclosure where passing through.

**\*\*\*Article 600.6(A) (1) At Point of Entry to a Sign; create a new Exception No. 2 to**

---

**add the following language:**

Exception No. 2. A disconnect shall not be required at the point of entry to a sign body, sign enclosure, or pole for branch circuit conductor(s). The conductors shall be enclosed in a Chapter 3 listed raceway or metal-jacketed cable identified for the location. The conductor(s) shall be routed to a device box which contains the disconnect. A field-applied permanent warning label that is visible during servicing shall be applied to the raceway at or near the point of entry into the sign enclosure or sign body. The warning label shall comply with 110.21(B) and state the following: "Danger. This raceway contains energized conductors." The marking shall include the location of the disconnecting means for the energized conductor(s). The disconnecting means shall be capable of being locked in the open position in accordance with 110.25.

**\*\*\*Article 600.6(A) (1) At Point of Entry to a Sign; move the original Exception 2 to create a new Exception No. 3 and add the following language:**

Exception No. 3: A disconnect shall not be required at the point of entry to a sign enclosure or sign body for branch circuit(s) or feeder conductor(s) that supply an internal panelboard(s) in a sign enclosure or sign body. The conductors shall be enclosed in a Chapter 3 listed raceway or metal-jacketed cable identified for the location. A field-applied permanent warning label that is visible during servicing shall be applied to the raceway at or near the point of entry into the sign enclosure or sign body. The warning label shall comply with 110.21(B) and state the following: "Danger. This raceway contains energized conductors." The marking shall include the location of the disconnecting means for the energized conductor(s). The disconnecting means shall be capable of being locked in the open position in accordance with 110.25.

(2017 Code) Informational Note: The location of the disconnect is intended to allow service or maintenance personnel complete and local control of the disconnecting means.

*(REASON FOR CHANGE: This is a modification of the nationwide sign manufacturing practice that was standard before the 2014 Code revision. It is more reasonable but not less than the current Code requirements. It provides local control of the disconnect by service personnel as the informational note suggests, while requiring a sign disconnect to be at or within sight of the sign. This also allows sign designers more flexibility in the placement of the disconnecting means in relation to the location of the sign.)*

**\*\*\*Article 680.25(A) remove the amendment that added the following language and exception:**

**680.25 Feeders.**

These provisions shall apply to any feeder on the supply side of panelboards supplying branch circuits for pool equipment covered in Part II of this article and on the load side of the service equipment or the source of a separately derived system.

**(A) Wiring Methods.**

**(1) Feeders.** Feeders shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit. The following wiring methods shall be permitted if not subject to physical damage:

- (1) Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit
- (2) Rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit
- (3) Reinforced thermosetting resin conduit
- (4) Electrical metallic tubing where installed on or in a building
- (5) Electrical nonmetallic tubing where installed within a building
- (6) Type MC Cable where installed within a building and if not subject to corrosive environment
- (7) Nonmetallic-sheathed cable
- (8) Type SE cable

~~Exception: A feeder within a one-family dwelling or two-family dwelling unit between remote panelboard and service equipment shall be permitted to run in flexible metal conduit or an approved cable assembly that includes an insulated equipment grounding conductor within its outer sheath. The equipment grounding conductor shall comply with 250.24(A) (5).~~

~~(REASON FOR CHANGE: Carry over from previous amendments. Text changed to reflect 2014 National Electrical Code. Exception deleted per Errata No.70-14-2)~~

*(REASON FOR CHANGE: Updates to this section in the 2017 National Electrical Code provided relief by recognizing these wiring methods.)*

**END**



# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 18 p. 1 of 2

Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Consider approval of a resolution amending the regular meeting schedule for the remainder of the 2023 calendar year.

Requested by:

Mayor Tompkins

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

Mayor Tompkins has requested that meetings November be adjusted due to the holidays. The previously adopted ordinance had Monday, November 13<sup>th</sup> as the regular Council meeting for November. The calendar has been amended to remove November 13<sup>th</sup> and to add Thursday, November 16<sup>th</sup> and Tuesday, November 28<sup>th</sup>.

Section 22.038(a) of the Texas Local Government Code states “the governing body of the municipality shall meet at the time and place determined by a resolution adopted by the governing body.” The attached resolution will establish the regular meetings for the remainder of the 2023 calendar year.

Recommended Action:

Staff recommends approval.

Attachments:

Proposed Resolution

**TOWN OF CROSS ROADS  
RESOLUTION NO. 2023-\_\_\_\_\_**

**A RESOLUTION OF THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS  
ROADS, TEXAS AMENDING THE REGULAR TOWN COUNCIL  
MEETINGS FOR THE REMAINDER OF THE 2023 CALENDAR YEAR  
AND PROVIDING AN EFFECTIVE DATE.**

WHEREAS, Section 22.038(a) of the Texas Local Government Code provides that the governing body of the municipality shall meet at the time and place as determined by a resolution adopted by the governing body.

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS:

**SECTION 1.**

That the Town Council will conduct regular meetings at 6:00 p.m. in the Cross Roads Council Chambers located at 1401 FM 424, Cross Roads, Texas on the following dates:

1. Tuesday, September 5, 2023 – Moved due to Labor Day holiday
2. Monday, September 18, 2023
3. Monday, October 2, 2023
4. Monday, October 16, 2023
5. Thursday, November 16, 2023
6. Tuesday, November 28, 2023
7. Monday, December 11, 2023 – Moved due to Christmas holiday

**SECTION 2.**

That this Resolution shall take effect immediately from and after its adoption and it is so resolved.

**PASSED AND APPROVED** by the Town Council of the Town of Cross Roads, Texas, on this **21<sup>st</sup> day of August, 2023.**

APPROVED:

\_\_\_\_\_  
T. Lynn Tompkins, Jr., Mayor

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Donna Butler, Town Secretary

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Town Attorney





# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 19 p. 1 of 23

## Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

## Agenda Item:

CONDUCT A PUBLIC HEARING, discuss and consider an application by Justin Brannan with School of Rock on behalf of property owner Bridgette Lily for a proposed text amendment to the Town of Cross Roads Comprehensive Zoning Regulations to expand the definition of “piano or musical instrument sales” to include instrument instruction activities to the definition of instrument sales.

## Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

## Description:

On May 18, 2023, applicant Justin Brannan reached out to the Town regarding the permit process to remodel the tenant space at 9920-9930 US Hwy 380 to accommodate a School of Rock. There are two uses in the Town’s Zoning Regulations that could possibly fit the applicant’s request, however, neither include definitions in the ordinance. The two uses are “studio/school for visual or performing arts” and “piano or musical instrument sales”. The “studio/school” use is permitted in the Commercial 1 – C1 district. The “sales” is permitted in the Commercial 2 – C2 district. The property the applicant is interested in is currently zoned Commercial 2 – C2.

Based on the applicant’s statements of activity for the space and, after researching how the business is classified in other municipalities, Staff made the determination that the most appropriate classification was “studio/school for the performing arts.” The applicant is of the opinion that School of Rock is an appropriate C2 use in that it does sell instruments secondary to instruction and the use is complementary to other retail uses. Ultimately, Staff recommended that the applicant take advantage of Section 14.03.042(a) of the Zoning Regulations which provides that “any person or corporation having a proprietary interest in any property may petition the government body of the Town for a change or amendment to the provisions of this article [the Zoning Regulations].”

On July 3, 2023, Mr. Brannan applied to the Town to add a new or unlisted use on behalf of property owner Bridgette Lily. The application is a request to expand the definition of “piano or musical instrument and sales” to include instrument instruction activities to the definition of instrument sales. If the Commission and the Town Council wish to accommodate this request, a draft ordinance has been prepared.

In accordance with Section 14.03.042 of the Town’s Code of Ordinances, notice has been published in the Town’s newspaper.



# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 19 p. 2 of 23

---

## Planning and Zoning Commission Recommendation:

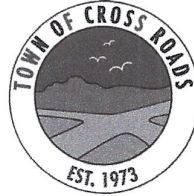
The Planning and Zoning Commission considered this item at their August 1, 2023 meeting. The Commission unanimously voted in favor of the proposed ordinance amendment.

## Recommended Action:

In discussions with the applicant, it was conveyed that Staff would likely not recommend approval of the proposed text amendment. The statement was made after reviewing the applicant's floor plan for the building (which does not indicate any rooms that display merchandise), conversations with the applicant and reviews of the School of Rock website. Staff is of the opinion that there is not a need to amend the text of the ordinance and that the appropriate classification is "studio/school for visual or performing arts" which is permitted in the Commercial 1 – C1 district. Staff is of the opinion that a facility that is primarily instructional in nature is not the highest and best use in the Commercial 2 – C2 district and is recommending denial of the applicant's request. The applicant is encouraged to investigate other opportunities within the Commercial 1 – C1 district.

## Attachments:

Application  
Proposed Floor Plan  
Draft Ordinance

TOWN OF CROSS ROADS  
DEVELOPMENT APPLICATIONDATE: 7/3/2023

APPLICATION #:

PROJECT: School of Rock

Before submitting an application, the applicant should consult with Town Staff to discuss the feasibility of the request and any additional requirements.

Applications are only received on the dates listed on the Submission Schedule.

## DEVELOPMENT APPLICATION

       Zone Change           Technical Site Plan           Grading      X   Miscellaneous

Land Owner Name Bridgette Lily

Signature

Owner Mailing Address 3730 E. McKinney St. Suite 130 Denton, TX 76208Owner Contact Phone 9403905662Email elishabomart@gmail.comApplicant Name Justin BrannanSignature Justin BrannanProject Contact Mailing Address 9920 & 9930 HWY 380, Cross Roads, TX 76227Project Contact Phone 214-507-0732Email jbrannan@schoolofrock.comProposed Project Name School of RockLocation 9920-9930 HWY 380, Cross Roads, TX 76227Abstract, Lot, Block See Next PageDCAD ID 38342Current Zoning C - 2 (Retail and General Commercial)Requested Zoning C - 2Number of Lots 1Acres 1.32

## REQUIRED SUBMISSION DOCUMENTS

1. Filing Fee; see page 6 of Master Fee Schedule.
2. Legal Description and plat of the subject site typed and attached separately or the subdivision name with lot and block number.
3. Map - A location map clearly showing the site in relation to adjacent streets and distance to nearest thoroughfare.
4. Site Plan (Commercial)
5. Drawings: one full, two 11x17
6. Electronic copy of all the above; this may be sent by email on submission day.

## ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

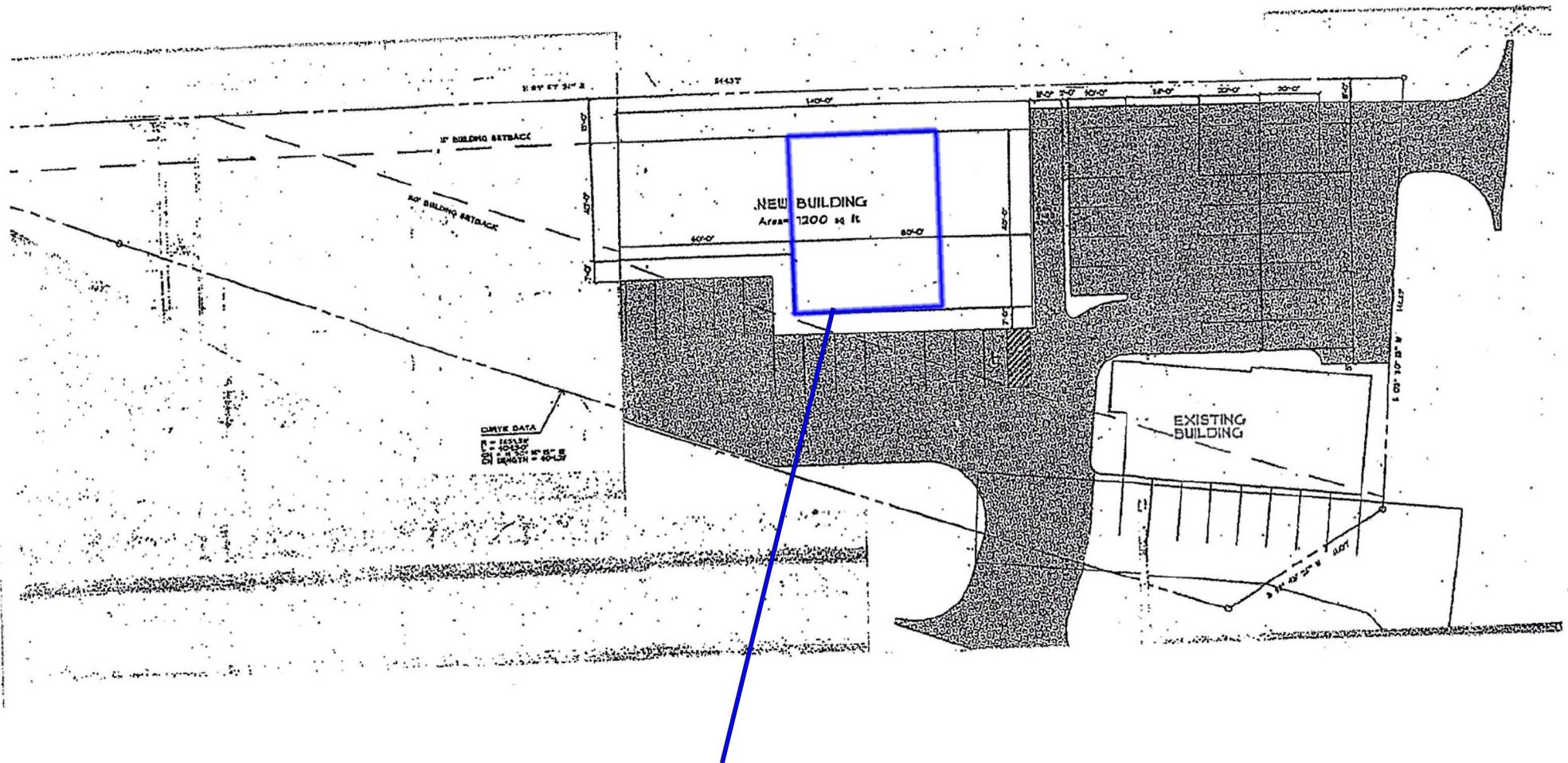
I would like to propose a text amendment to the definition of C-2 use EE from "Piano or musical instrument sales;" to "Piano or musical instrument sales and instruction;" thus allowing business that offer both instrument sales as well as music instrument instruction to be an allowed use in C-2 zoned areas.



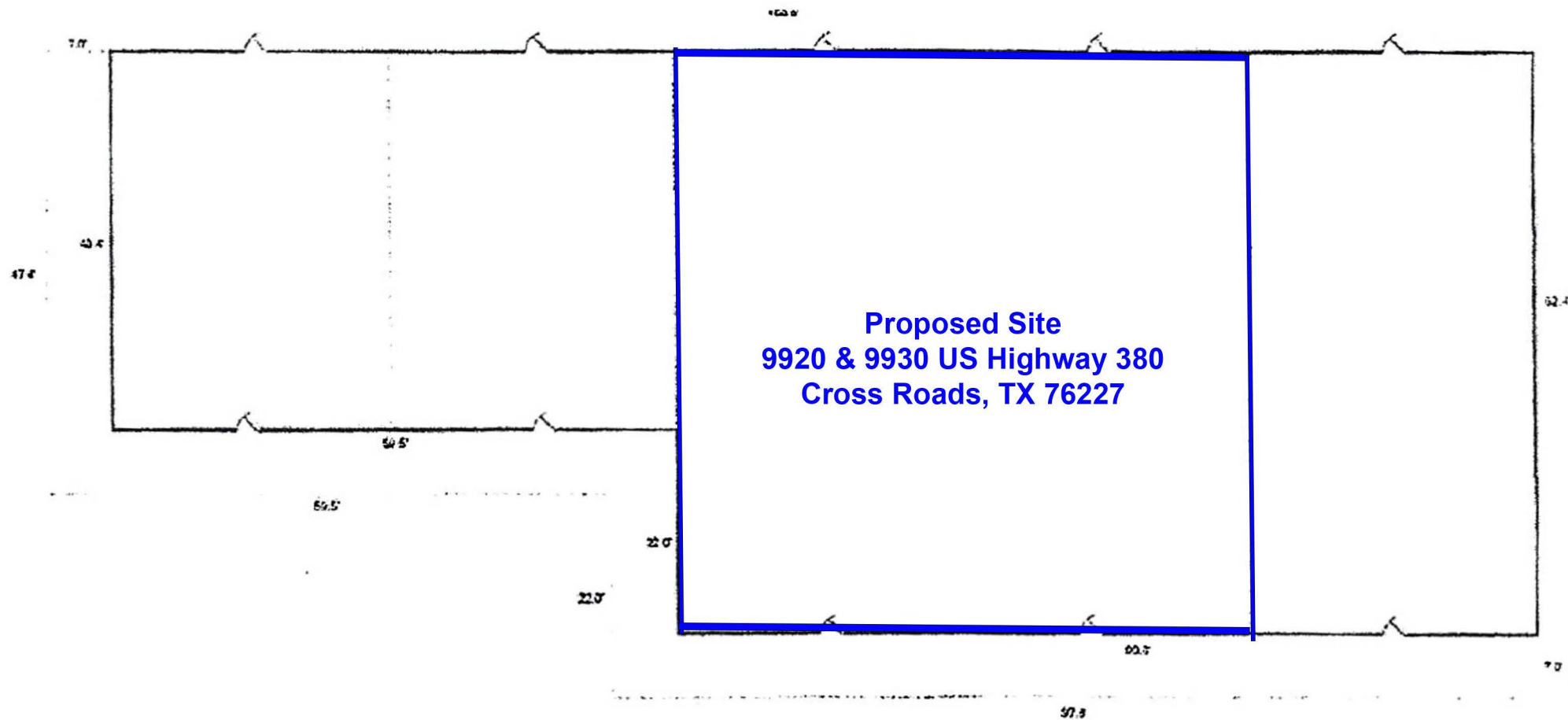
**ADDRESS: 9920 & 9930 US HWY 380, CROSS ROADS TX 76227**

**LEGAL DESCRIPTION:**

**A0803A R.J. MOSELEY, TR 23,24, 1.32 ACRES, OLD DCAD TR 6B, 7B**



**Proposed Site: 9920 & 9930 US HIGHWAY 380, CROSS ROADS, TX 76227**





# Development Application

School of Rock  
Cross Roads  
7/3/2023





# Who is School of Rock?



# What we ARE and what we are NOT?

Item 19 p. 8 of 23

**What we are:** A growing, passionate community dedicated to enriching lives through performance-based music education.

## **Facts:**

- 332 locations open in 14 countries
- 60,000+ active students
- We employ 4,000+ professional musicians
- We hold 5,000+ performances in real venues every year
- We are authorized dealers for all of our major musical instrument manufacturers and we sell this equipment through our GearSelect program.

## **What we are NOT:**

- We are NOT an accredited education institution (i.e. we are NOT a “school”)



August 21, 2023 Town Council Agenda Packet 204 of 255

**SCHOOL of ROCK**



# Why does Cross Roads want a School of Rock?



# SOR Swag & Music Equipment Sales

Item 19 p. 10 of 23

- We sell School of Rock branded merchandise to everyone on-site and at shows and events!
- We have partnerships with some of the world's leading brands to provide our customers the best options for musical instruments and other supporting gear!
- Customers purchase merchandise and instruments through us and then continue to purchase the supporting gear (e.g. drum heads, guitar & bass strings, pedals, etc.)
- We promote sales at every lesson, rehearsal, and show!



August 21, 2023 Town Council Agenda Packet 206 of 255

**SCHOOL OF ROCK**

# What value we bring your community?

Item 19 p. 11 of 23

- We attract **100's of families into Cross Roads** that would likely not be there otherwise (we already have 100+ interested families from local marketing).
- **Local retailers & other tenant's benefit in sales**, as parents will frequent the surrounding retailers while their child is attending School of Rock.
- Typical schools enroll 175-300 students that attend weekly
- Typical age of students -
  - 85% ages 4-18;
  - 15% +18 for adult programming;
  - Average age is 15
- 95% of customer basis is drop off
  - Parents not encouraged to stay due to children's safety
  - Very little parking required



August 21, 2023 Town Council Agenda Packet 207 of 255

**SCHOOL OF ROCK**



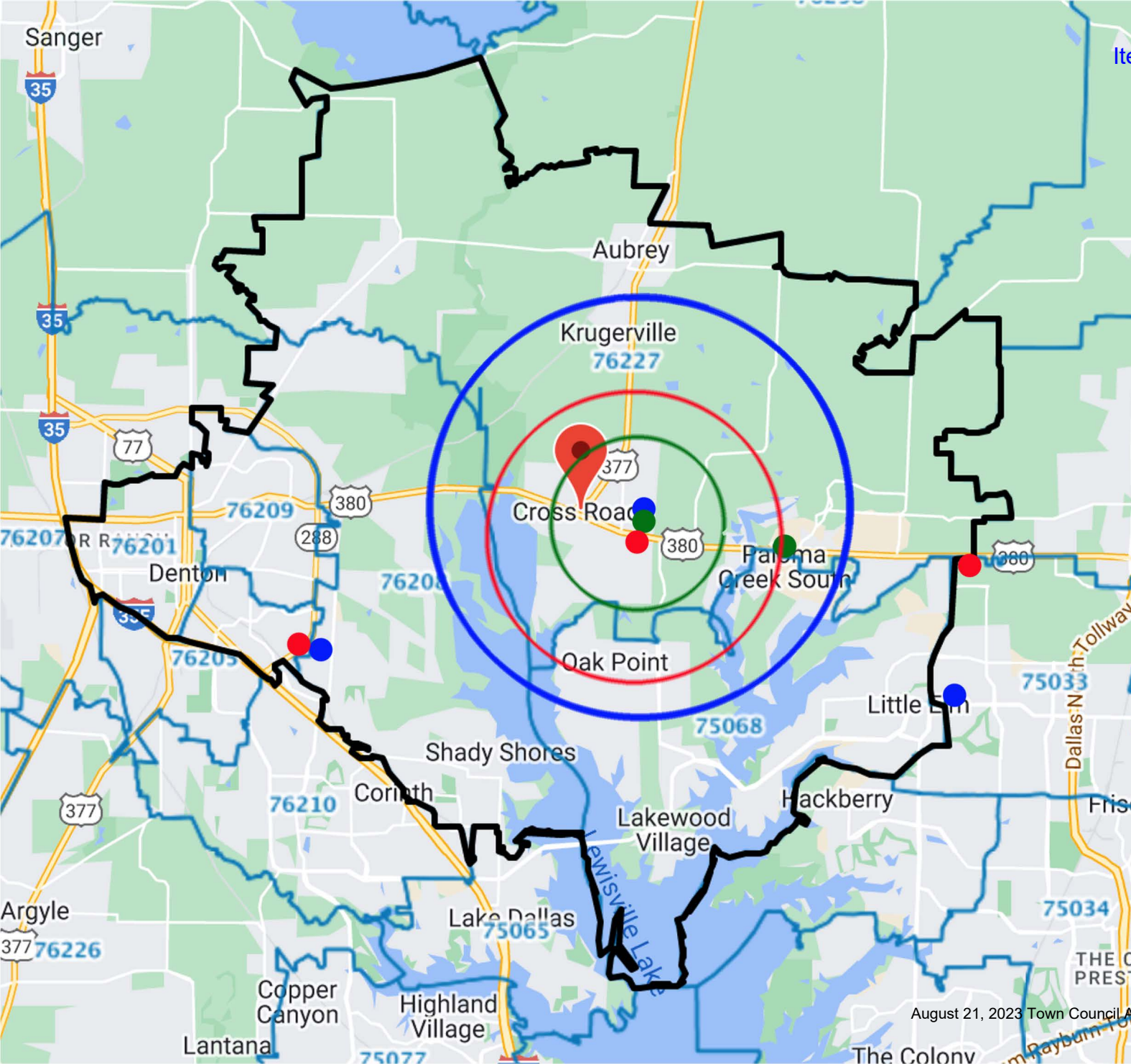
● **Chick fil A**

● **Walmart**

● **Starbucks**



**SOR Exclusive Territory is much larger than other franchises**



# Why Cross Roads and Why this specific site?





# Why Cross Roads and Why 9920 Highway 380?

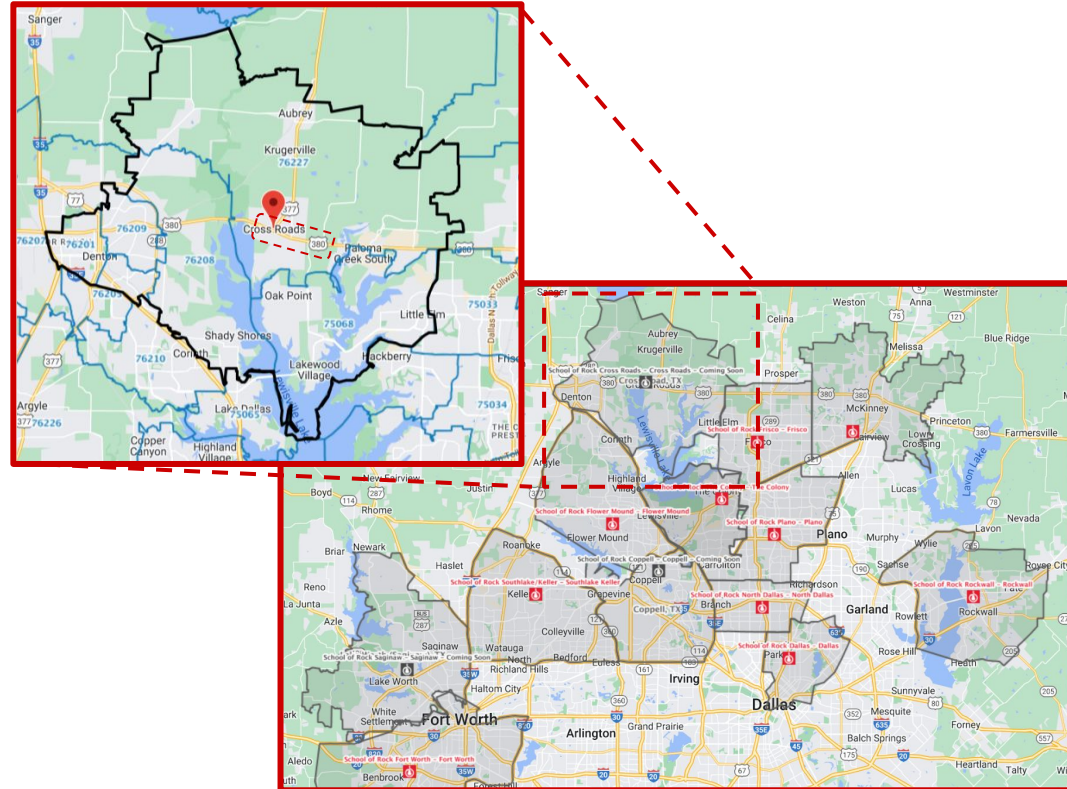
Item 19 p. 14 of 23

## Why Cross Roads?

- Cross Roads is the center of one of the largest exclusive SOR territories in DFW.
- Population: 361K within 10 miles
- 43% are Families with Kids
- 55% HH income over \$75K/yr
- Significant growth expected in the next 5-10 years

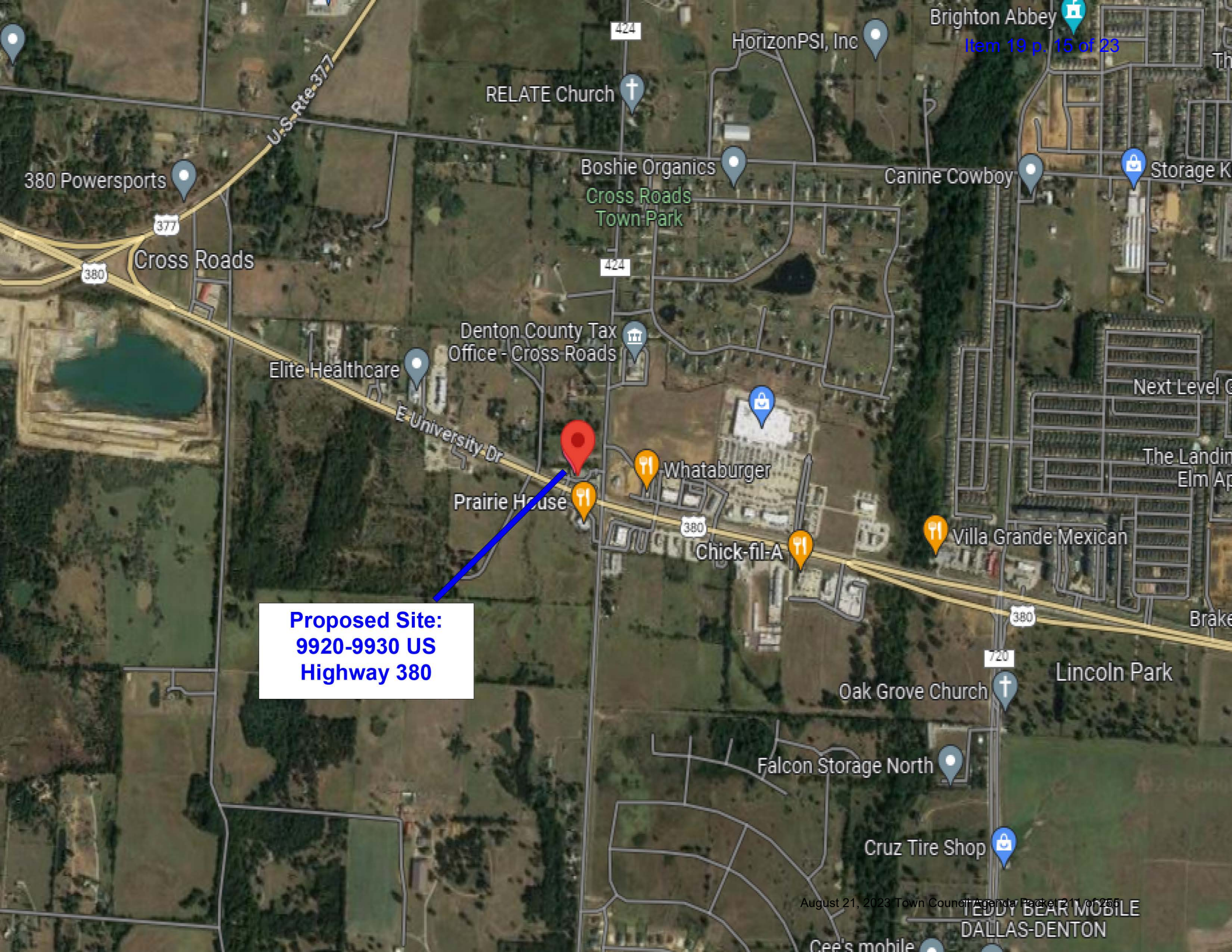
## Why 9920 Highway 380?

- Located on major thoroughfare (i.e. Highway 380) with high visibility
- Size is > SOR minimum of 2700 sq ft.
- Located in a growing trade area with other nearby businesses for parents to go to while waiting for kids.



August 21, 2023 Town Council Agenda Packet 210 of 255





**Proposed Site:**  
**9920-9930 US**  
**Highway 380**



**Proposed Site:  
9920-9930 US  
Highway 380**





# Mock-Up of School of Rock Sign at Site

Item 19 p. 17 of 23



August 21, 2023 Town Council Agenda Packet 213 of 255

**SCHOOL of ROCK**

# Examples of Inside a School of Rock

Item 19 p. 18 of 23



August 21, 2023 Town Council Agenda Packet 214 of 255

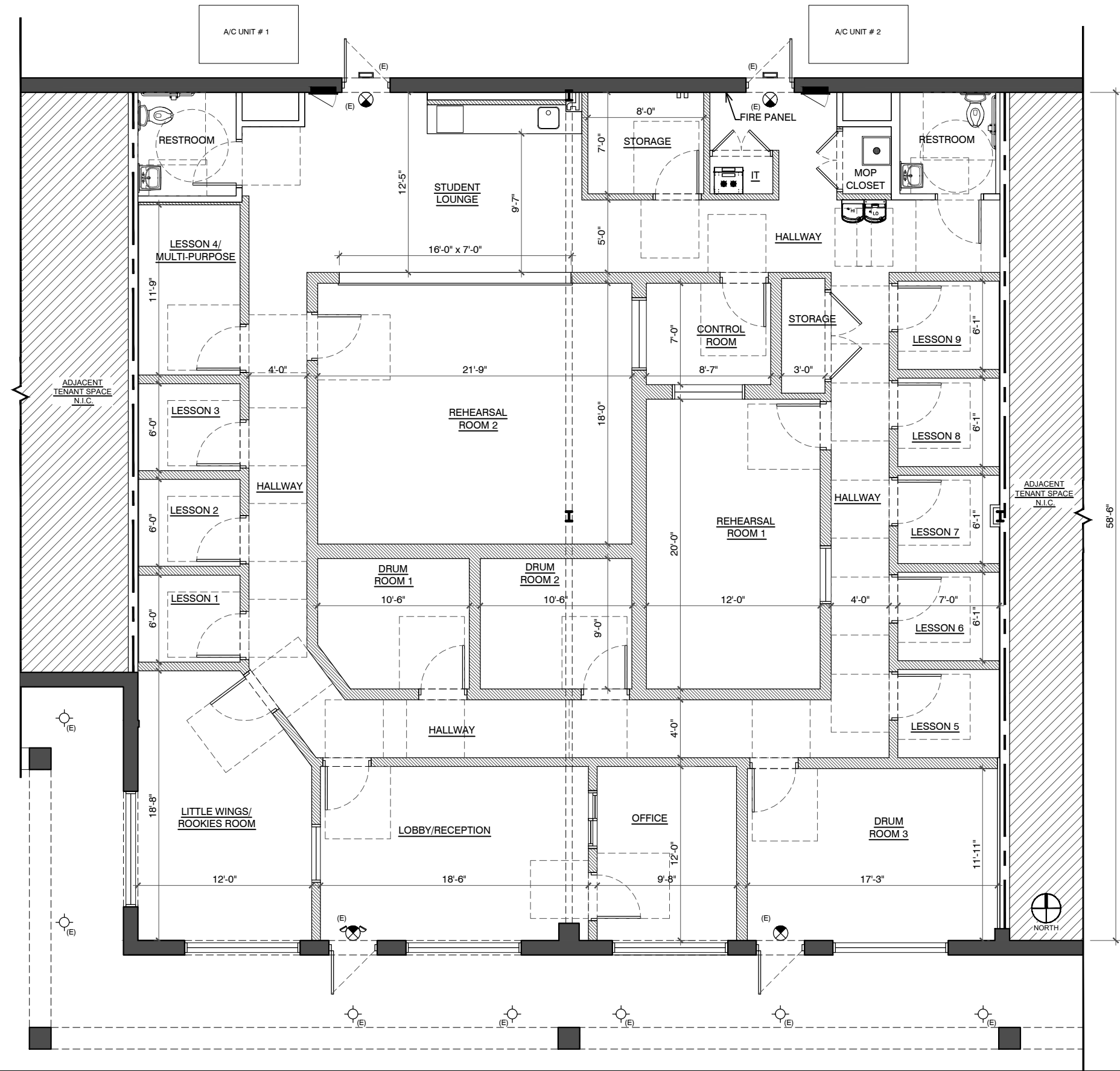
**SCHOOL of ROCK**



# More Examples

Item 19 p. 19 of 23





SCHOOL OF ROCK  
CROSS ROADS, TX

PROPOSED PLAN # 4  
SCALE: 1/8" = 1'-0"



3330 NE 34TH ST.  
FT. LAUDERDALE FL 33308  
PH: 954-566-5051  
WWW.LASKYARCHITECTPA.COM  
August 21, 2023 Town Council Agenda Packet 216 of 255

© LASKY ARCHITECT, P.A.  
THIS DOCUMENT IS THE PROPERTY OF LASKY ARCHITECT, P.A.  
AND SHALL NOT BE REPRODUCED WITHOUT THE WRITTEN  
CONSENT OF LASKY ARCHITECT, P.A.

**TOWN OF CROSS ROADS  
ORDINANCE NO. 2023-\_\_**

**AN ORDINANCE OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS, AMENDING DIVISION 1 (“IN GENERAL”) OF ARTICLE 14.03 (“COMPREHENSIVE ZONING ORDINANCE”) OF CHAPTER 14 (“ZONING”) OF THE CODE OF ORDINANCES OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS, AS HERETOFORE AMENDED, TO AMEND SECTION 14.03.003 (DEFINITIONS) BY ADDING A DEFINITION FOR “PIANO OR MUSICAL INSTRUMENT SALES AND INSTRUCTION”; PROVIDING A REPEALING CLAUSE; PROVIDING A SAVINGS CLAUSE; PROVIDING A SEVERABILITY CLAUSE; PROVIDING A PENALTY OF FINE NOT TO EXCEED THE SUM OF TWO THOUSAND (\$2,000.00) DOLLARS FOR EACH OFFENSE; AND PROVIDING AN EFFECTIVE DATE.**

**WHEREAS**, the Town Council has appointed a Planning and Zoning Commission to consider and recommend modifications to the text and boundaries of the various zoning districts and appropriate use regulations being enforced therein; and

**WHEREAS**, the Planning and Zoning Commission has given reasonable consideration to, among other things, the character of the districts and their suitability for particular uses and standards, with a view to conserving the value of buildings and encouraging the most appropriate use of land throughout the Town; and

**WHEREAS**, the Town Council of the Town of Cross Roads deems it necessary, for the purpose of promoting the health, safety, morals, or general welfare of the Town, to enact said zoning regulations; and

**WHEREAS**, the Cross Roads Town Council, in compliance with State Law with reference to changes to zoning regulations under the Town’s Comprehensive Zoning Regulations, having given the requisite notices by publication and otherwise, and after holding due hearings and affording a full and fair hearing to all the property owners generally, and to the persons interested and situated in the affected area and in the vicinity thereof; the governing body of the Town of Cross Roads deems it to be in the best interest and welfare of the Town said zoning regulations should be amended as provided herein

**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT ORDAINED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS:**

**SECTION 1:** That all matters stated hereinabove are found to be true and correct and are incorporated herein by reference as if copied in their entirety.

**SECTION 2.** That Section 14.03.003 (“Definitions”) of Division 1 (“In General”) of Article 14.03 (“Comprehensive Zoning Ordinance”) of Chapter 14 (“Zoning”) of the Code of

Ordinances of the Town of Cross Roads, Texas, as heretofore amended, be and is hereby amended to add a definition for *Piano or Musical Instrument Sales and Instruction* without amendment, repeal or change to any other subpart, section or provision of Section 14.03.003, to read as follows:

**“CHAPTER 14  
ZONING**

...

**ARTICLE 14.03 COMPREHENSIVE ZONING ORDINANCE**

**Division 1. Generally**

...

**Sec. 14.03.003 Definitions**

...

*Piano or Musical Instrument Sales and Instruction. An establishment engaged in the commercial enterprise of music instruction which shall include the selling of instruments and other associated goods. Also referred to as Piano or Musical Instrument Sales.*

...”

**SECTION 3.** That any person, firm, or corporation violating any of the provisions or terms of this Ordinance shall be subject to the same penalty as provided for in the Town of Cross Roads Comprehensive Zoning Regulations, and upon conviction shall be punished by a fine not to exceed the sum of Two Thousand Dollars (\$2,000.00) for each offense.

**SECTION 4.** If any section, paragraph, subdivision, clause, phrase or provision of this ordinance shall be judged invalid or unconstitutional, the same shall not affect the validity of this ordinance as a whole or any part or portion thereof, other than that portion so decided to be invalid or unconstitutional.

**SECTION 5.** Injunctive Relief. In addition to and accumulative of all other penalties, the Town of Cross Roads shall have the right to seek injunctive relief for any and all violations of this ordinance.

**SECTION 6.** Whereas, it has been found that there has been a change in conditions in the above described property, it is now necessary that it be given the above zoning classification in order to permit its proper development, and in order to protect the public interest, comfort and general welfare, this ordinance shall take effect immediately from and after its passage and publication of the caption of said ordinance, as the law in such case provides.

**DULY PASSED** by the Town Council of the Town of Cross Roads, Texas, on the \_\_\_\_\_  
day of \_\_\_\_\_ 2023.

\_\_\_\_\_  
T. Lynn Tompkins, Jr., Mayor

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Donna Butler, Town Secretary

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Matthew C. G. Boyle, Town Attorney





# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 20 p. 1 of 5

## Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

## Agenda Item:

Discuss and consider approval of a commercial building permit and elevations for a proposed Dollar Tree store in the Cross Roads Retail Addition generally described as property located north of US Hwy 380 and east of Walmart Dr. in the Villages of Cross Roads Commercial development within the Town of Cross Roads. (2023-0524-02C)

## Prepared by:

Rodney Patterson, Building Official

## Description:

Applicant Linda Snapp submitted a commercial building permit application on behalf of property owner Sage Cross Roads LLC. for a proposed Dollar Tree store on May 23, 2023. The purpose of the submittal is to construct a future Dollar Tree retail store. The Building Official performed a technical review of the permit application, construction drawings and elevations on June 5, 2023. Comments were provided back to the applicant and a resubmittal was made on July 25, 2023. On July 27, 2023, the applicant sent in updated elevations for the proposed store for staff consideration.

The applicant has proposed modified elevations which do not meet the architectural requirements of Chapter 14. Specifically, there is not four-sided architecture and there is the requirement to provide articulation on spans greater than one hundred feet (sides of the building). Staff advised the applicant that there would be a recommendation of denial and encouraged the applicant to make modifications to the renderings to better match the intent of the ordinance. Included are the elevations proposed after Staff's input.

## Recommended Action:

The revisions provided do meet the four-sided architecture requirements of the ordinance with the exception of the rear elevation. (Council may deem the rear elevation to not be visible and therefore it would be exempt). Unfortunately, the building still does not meet the articulation requirements for the sides. Due to the lack of vertical articulation on the sides, Staff is recommending denial. However, the Council may want to use the opportunity to identify areas of improvement on the front elevation in lieu of changes to the less visible sides of the building.

## Attachments:

Building Officials Comments (3rd Review) – July 27, 2023

Building Elevations



**Town of Cross Roads**

3201 US Hwy 380 Suite 105

Cross Roads, Texas 76227

940-365-9693 office | 469-375-5905 fax

[town-information@crossroadstx.gov](mailto:town-information@crossroadstx.gov) / [crossroadstx.gov](http://crossroadstx.gov)

### 3rd Building Code Comments for Dollar Tree US Hwy 380

**Denied**

9,977 Sq. Ft.

7-27-23

#### **Comments to be Addressed Before Permits are Issued** (items in black addressed)

1. Current adopted codes are the 2012 International Codes and the 2015 International Energy Conservation Code as well as the 2008 NEC. Update codes on coversheet.
2. Check code references throughout.
3. Provide Energy Code Compliance Reports for Envelope, Interior and exterior Lighting, and Mechanical systems detailing compliance with the 2015 IECC.
4. Several notes appear to indicate that the building is non-sprinklered. The Town has adopted the North Central Texas Council of Governments amendments which require sprinklers for any structure 6,000 sq. ft. or greater.
5. Minimum height for dumpster screening is 8'. See code section 14.03.008(b)11 for additional requirements.
6. **Facades do not appear to meet articulation requirements in Section 14.03.008(b). See specifically four-sided architecture and articulation requirements. (2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> reviews) Revised facades still do not meet four-sided architecture and horizontal and vertical articulation requirements of Sec. 14.03.008(b)1&2.**

#### **Specifically as follows:**

**Rear Façade: no horizontal or vertical articulation (one or the other is required unless Council deems this side not to be visible) and may need additional elements to meet four-sided architecture.**

**Left and Right Facades: Meets horizontal articulation but not vertical (both required). Specifically, the 6' offset for 25% of façade.**

7. Provide proof of submission for TDLR review of TAS requirements.
8. All condensate piping shall terminate to the fixture side of a wet trap, not to gutters.
9. Provide site lumen calculations to verify compliance with maximum 80,000 lumens per acre requirement per ordinance. Include parking lot as well as building mounted exterior lights. **(Added comment on 2<sup>nd</sup> review) Make sure all lighting fixtures on exterior are full cut off fixtures.**
10. Provide total developed length of gas line as well as loads of each section of gas piping to verify sizing is adequate.

11. Site Sewer line indicates .5% grade. Minimum grade for private sewer lines per the IPC is 1%. Provide letter from Engineer stating design will function properly based upon sound engineering practices or provide minimum 1% slope.

### Additional Note from 2<sup>nd</sup> plan review

**\*\*Sheet C7.0 originally showed a 1" irrigation meter as well as a 1" domestic meter. Revised sheet C7.0 now shows a 1" irrigation meter and a 1.5" domestic meter. Just a heads up that Mustang requires a 5X5 concrete vault for any meters 1.5" or greater. You might want to get with your design engineer to determine if this increase is required by the actual load calculations or if it is a preference.**

Items below do not require a response

### Comments to be Addressed During Construction

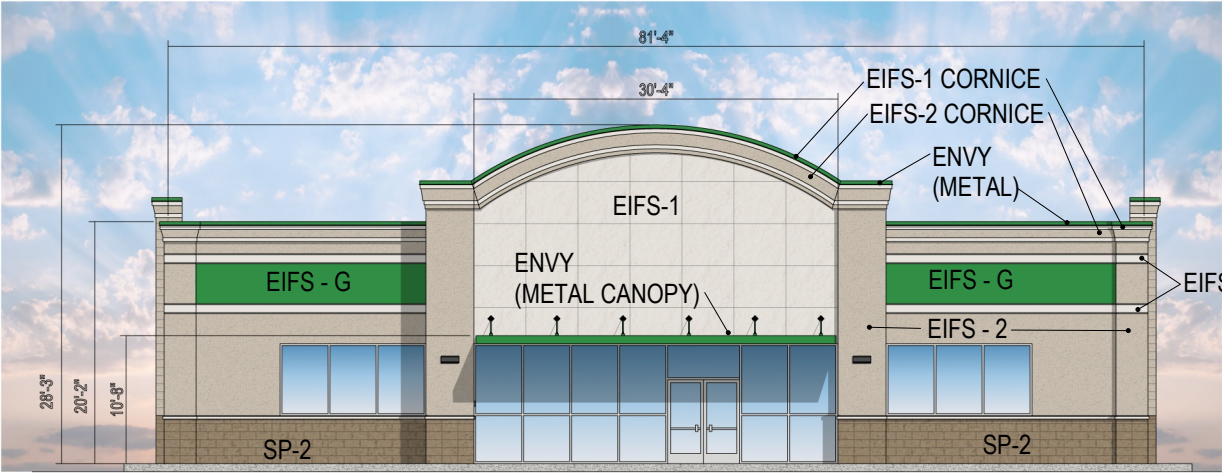
1. Comments cover an in-depth look at plans as submitted. However, omission of specific plan comments does not absolve the contractor of the responsibility for insuring that all construction complies with the 2012 International Codes as adopted by the Town of Cross Roads including the 2015 International Energy Conservation Code. Requirements for residential construction can be found in the 2012 International Building Code (Electrical to comply with the 2008 NEC as well as the 2015 IECC)
2. Interior lighting must comply with the bi-level switching and tandem wiring provisions of the 2015 IECC.
3. Heat traps to be installed in inlet and outlet sides of water heater unless part of a re-circulating system. Insulate first 8' of both water lines at water heater if pipe built heat traps are installed.
4. T&P line from water heater to run to exterior of building or to properly plumbed waste receptor. If run to waste receptor, drain from receptor must be Cast Iron, Copper DWV or CPVC.
5. All refrigerant lines to be insulated with min. 1" pipe insulation.
6. Condensate to be run to house side of wet trap.
7. **Smoke detector required in return side of HVAC systems rated > 2000 CFM.**
8. **Minimum backflow protection shall be RPZ's installed at point of use for all potential cross connections.**
9. **All mechanical equipment shall be screened from view.**
10. **Exit and emergency lighting per 2012 IBC & IFC.**
11. **Fire sprinkler and alarm plans require a separate permit and plan review and are a deferred submittal.**
12. **Sign plans require a separate permit and plan review and are a deferred submittal.**

If you have any questions or comments, please feel free to contact me at (940)365-9693.

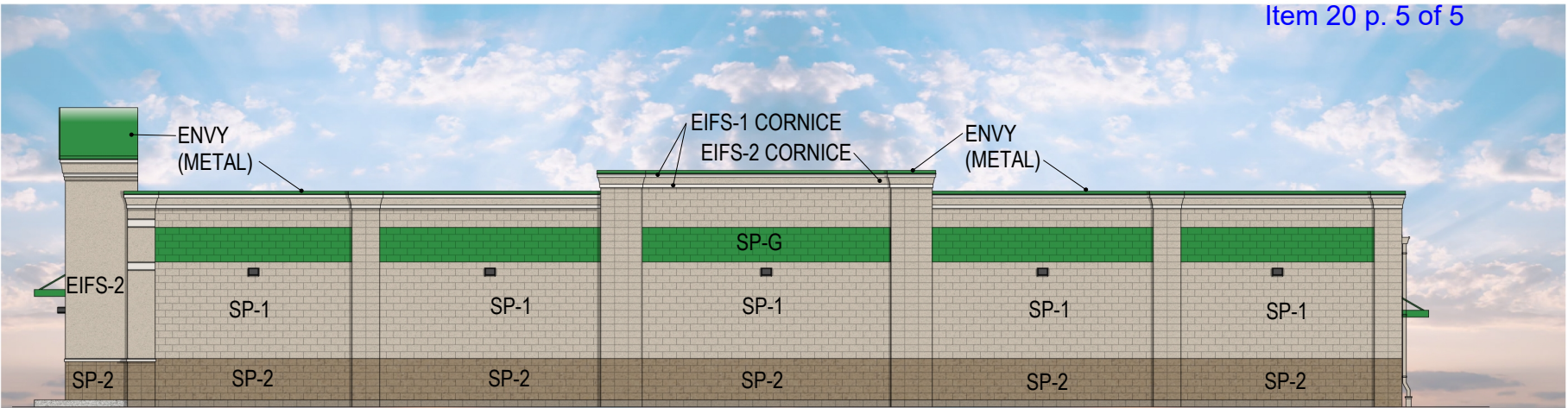
Thank You,

Rodney Patterson  
Building Official  
Town of Cross Roads

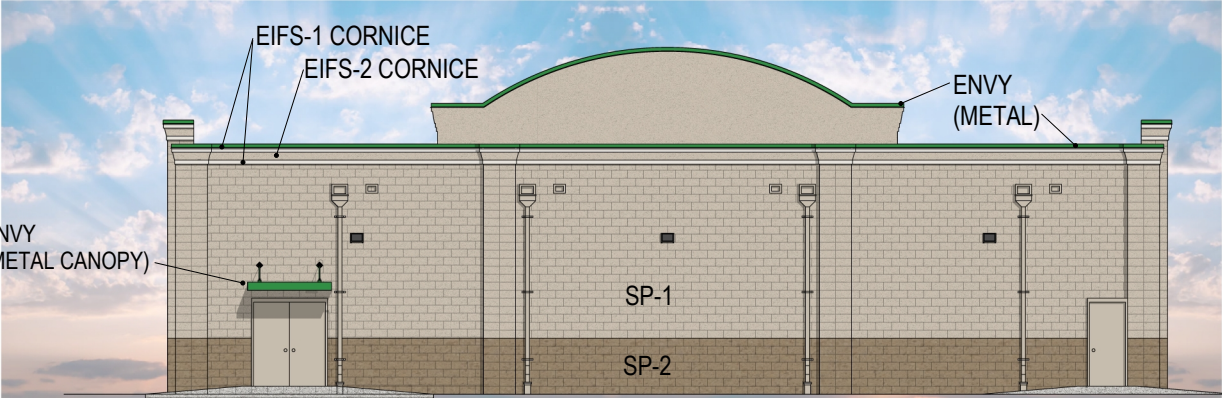




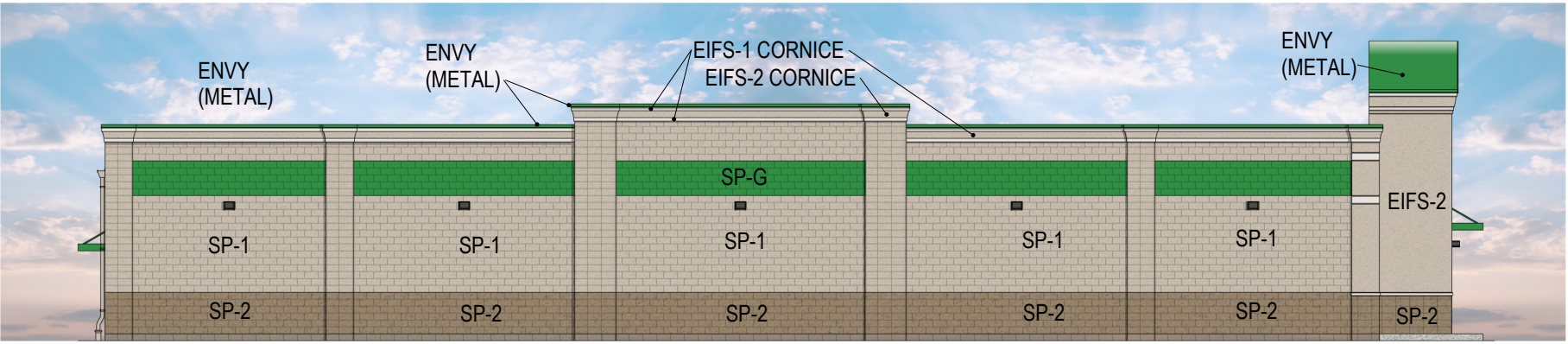
FRONT ELEVATION



RIGHT ELEVATION







REAR ELEVATION



LEFT ELEVATION

Canopy to be supplied and installed by Dollar Tree's sign vendor

SW ENVY		SPLIT-FACED BLOCK-G EIFS-G
SW AESTHETIC WHITE / STO SMOKED PUTTY		EIFS-1
SW BALANCED BEIGE / STO SANDSTONE		EIFS-2 SPLIT-FACED BLOCK SP-1
SW VIRTUAL TAUPE		SPLIT-FACED BLOCK SP-2

# CROSS ROADS , TX

## Dollar Tree - 11700 HWY 380





# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 21 p. 1 of 26

Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Discuss the proposed Fiscal Year 2023-2024 budget.

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

Council has had discussions at the July Council meeting and the June Council retreat regarding the proposed FY 2024 Proposed Budget. There have been some minor modification to the proposed budget from the July 10, 2023 meeting which include the following:

**General Fund:**

Revenues:

- Increase in Health Inspection Fees related to the new contract that will require increased permit fees.
- Increase in MDD Contribution to account for increased Staff time for newsletter.

Expenses:

- Increase in Property and Liability and Workers Compensation expenses over Administration and Police due to higher than expected increase in insurance rates and addition of property/equipment to be covered.
- Increase in Training and Travel by \$3,750 to add funds for employee team building activities per Council directive in Town Administrator Performance Goals.
- Increase in Sanitation Services due to new contract which will be covered by increased permit fees.

**MDD:**

Revenues:

- Increased Rental Income due to recent increase in tenant lease rates
- Increase in Software due to higher than anticipated software costs.
- Addition of Property and Liability Insurance to cover the costs of the insurance coverage at the lease house.

Expenses:

- Increased MDD Business Grant expenses for potential future projects including a coupon program and other grant opportunities.
- Increased Planning/Consulting for future consultant opportunities on a project specific basis.





# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 21 p. 2 of 26

## **Parks:**

### Revenue:

- Add \$10,000 transfer to the Parks Fund from the COVID fund to help assist with the cost of a dumpster enclosure.

### Expense:

- Allocate \$15,000 in Capital Improvements to help fund the proposed dumpster enclosure.

## **Vehicle and Equipment Replacement Fund:**

### Expense:

- Per Council direction at the July 10<sup>th</sup> meeting continue with the FY 2023 order of two vehicles with purchase date in FY 2024 due to limited vehicle availability.

## **COVID Fund:**

### Expense:

- Reduced the transfer to the Vehicle and Equipment Replacement Fund by \$10,000 and move it to the Park Improvement Fund.

While the proposed budget indicates a negative net income of approximately \$29,000, the General Fund reserves remains strong at 54% (197 days) which is over the goal of 180 days during the US 380 construction project and 150 days during non-construction times.

### Staff Recommendation:

This item is for discussion purposes only. A budget hearing will be conducted at the September 18, 2023 meeting where the Council will adopt the proposed budget.

### Attachments:

Draft Proposed Budget – All Funds



Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - GENERAL FUND - 100</b>			
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - GENERAL FUND</b>	<b>\$ 4,158,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,838,900.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,847,605.00</b>
<b>EXPENSES - GENERAL FUND - 100</b>			
<b>ADMINISTRATION - 110</b>			
Personnel and Benefits	\$ 617,780.00	\$ 612,600.00	\$ 665,950.00
Supplies	\$ 10,950.00	\$ 13,250.00	\$ 13,000.00
Contractual Services	\$ 867,904.00	\$ 855,629.00	\$ 842,261.50
Maintenance	\$ 8,300.00	\$ 19,000.00	\$ 15,000.00
Capital Outlay	\$ 6,500.00	\$ 4,500.00	\$ -
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 1,511,434.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,504,979.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,536,211.50</b>
<b>MUNICIPAL COURT - 210</b>			
Personnel and Benefits	\$ 10,255.25	\$ 11,267.50	\$ 12,954.00
Supplies	\$ 7,350.00	\$ 5,850.00	\$ 6,450.00
Contractual Services	\$ 24,000.00	\$ 31,600.00	\$ 36,350.00
Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 41,605.25</b>	<b>\$ 48,717.50</b>	<b>\$ 55,754.00</b>
<b>POLICE -310</b>			
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 1,530,568.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,428,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,632,885.00</b>
<b>PARKS &amp; RECREATION - 410</b>			
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 31,990.00</b>	<b>\$ 32,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 21,300.00</b>
<b>COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT - 510</b>			
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 2,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 2,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,000.00</b>
<b>INSPECTIONS - 520</b>			
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 21,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 57,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 63,000.00</b>
<b>PUBLIC WORKS - 610</b>			
<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>\$ 99,100.00</b>	<b>\$ 116,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 136,000.00</b>
<b>TOTAL OPERATING EXP - GEN. FUND</b>	<b>\$ 3,238,197.25</b>	<b>\$ 3,189,696.50</b>	<b>\$ 3,448,150.50</b>
<b>Net Operating Income</b>	<b>\$ 919,802.75</b>	<b>\$ 649,203.50</b>	<b>\$ 399,454.50</b>
<b>TRANSFERS OUT - 710 - FUND BALANCE - CAPITAL</b>			
	\$ 660,860.00	\$ 473,345.00	\$ 428,700.00
<b>Income</b>	<b>\$ 258,942.75</b>	<b>\$ 175,858.50</b>	<b>\$ (29,245.50)</b>
<b>Beginning Balance</b>	<b>\$ 1,720,265.76</b>	<b>\$ 1,720,265.76</b>	<b>\$ 1,896,124.26</b>
<b>Ending Balance</b>	<b>\$ 1,979,208.51</b>	<b>\$ 1,896,124.26</b>	<b>\$ 1,866,878.76</b>
<b>% Reserve</b>	<b>61.1%</b>	<b>59.4%</b>	<b>54.1%</b>
<b>Days of Reserve</b>	<b>223.09</b>	<b>216.98</b>	<b>197.62</b>

Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY24 Proposed
<b>LEGAL CONTINGENCY</b>			
<b>REVENUES - LEGAL CONTINGENCY - 150</b>			
Investment Income	\$ 1,012.30	\$ 7,000.00	\$ 15,000.00
Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL REVENUES - LEGAL CONTINGENCY	\$ 1,012.30	\$ 7,000.00	\$ 15,000.00
<b>EXPENSES - LEGAL CONTINGENCY - 150</b>			
TOTAL EXPENSES - LEGAL CONTINGENCY	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Net Income	\$ 1,012.30	\$ 7,000.00	\$ 15,000.00
FUND BALANCE	\$ 506,977.00	\$ 512,964.70	\$ 527,964.70

**MUNICIPAL DEVELOPMENT DISTRICT**

<b>REVENUES - MDD - 210</b>			
Sales Tax	\$ 500,000.00	\$ 445,000.00	\$ 438,000.00
Investment Income	\$ 1,750.00	\$ 13,000.00	\$ 22,100.00
Miscellaneous	\$ 15,000.00	\$ 15,000.00	\$ 19,200.00
Other Income	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL REVENUES - MUNICIPAL DEV. DISTRICT	\$ 516,750.00	\$ 473,000.00	\$ 479,300.00
<b>EXPENSES - MDD - 210</b>			
Contractual Services	\$ 132,100.00	\$ 157,655.00	\$ 203,000.00
Maintenance	\$ 40,000.00	\$ 40,000.00	\$ 10,000.00
Debt Service	\$ 50,019.28	\$ 50,019.28	\$ 50,019.28
Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL EXPENSES - MUNICIPAL DEV. DISTRICT	\$ 222,119.28	\$ 247,674.28	\$ 263,019.28
Net Income	\$ 294,630.72	\$ 225,325.72	\$ 216,280.72
FUND BALANCE	\$ 1,030,787.85	\$ 961,482.85	\$ 1,177,763.57

**COURT TECHNOLOGY**

<b>REVENUES - COURT TECHNOLOGY - 240</b>			
Court Revenue	\$ 7,500.00	\$ 4,800.00	\$ 4,800.00
TOTAL REVENUES - COURT TECHNOLOGY	\$ 7,500.00	\$ 4,800.00	\$ 4,800.00
<b>EXPENSES - COURT TECHNOLOGY - 240</b>			
Contractual Services	\$ 9,500.00	\$ 13,500.00	\$ 3,950.00
Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL EXPENSES - COURT TECHNOLOGY	\$ 9,500.00	\$ 13,500.00	\$ 3,950.00
Net Income	\$ (2,000.00)	\$ (8,700.00)	\$ 850.00
FUND BALANCE	\$ 8,498.00	\$ 1,798.00	\$ 2,648.00

**COURT SECURITY**

<b>REVENUES - COURT SECURITY - 241</b>			
Court Revenue	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 6,125.00
TOTAL REVENUES - COURT SECURITY	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,650.00	\$ 6,125.00
<b>EXPENSES - COURT SECURITY - 241</b>			
Contractual Services	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,000.00

Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY24 Proposed
Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 30,000.00
TOTAL EXPENSES - COURT SECURITY	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 35,000.00
Net Income	\$ 625.00	\$ 650.00	\$ (28,875.00)
FUND BALANCE	\$ 33,618.57	\$ 33,643.57	\$ 4,768.57

**TRUANCY**

<b>REVENUES - TRUANCY - 242</b>			
Court Revenue	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00
TOTAL REVENUES - TRUANCY	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00
<b>EXPENSES - TRUANCY - 242</b>			
TOTAL EXPENSES - TRUANCY	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Net Income	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00
FUND BALANCE	\$ 24,073.93	\$ 24,073.93	\$ 29,698.93

**JURY**

<b>REVENUES - JURY - 243</b>			
Court Revenue	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00
TOTAL REVENUES - JURY	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00
<b>EXPENSES - JURY - 243</b>			
TOTAL EXPENSES - JURY	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Net Income	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00
FUND BALANCE	\$ 468.80	\$ 468.80	\$ 568.80

**LEOSE**

<b>REVENUES - LEOSE - 260</b>			
Investment Income	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Intergovernmental	\$ 1,100.00	\$ 750.00	\$ 1,100.00
TOTAL REVENUES - LEOSE	\$ 1,100.00	\$ 750.00	\$ 1,100.00
<b>EXPENSES - LEOSE -260</b>			
TOTAL EXPENSES - LEOSE	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Net Income	\$ 1,100.00	\$ 750.00	\$ 1,100.00
FUND BALANCE	\$ 1,577.67	\$ 1,227.67	\$ 1,227.67

**POLICE DONATIONS**

<b>REVENUES - POLICE DONATIONS - 265</b>			
Contributions	\$ -	\$ 1,700.00	\$ 1,700.00
Donations	\$ 1,700.00	\$ -	\$ -
Intergovernmental	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL REVENUES - POLICE DONATIONS	\$ 1,700.00	\$ 1,700.00	\$ 1,700.00
<b>EXPENSES - POLICE DONATIONS - 265</b>			
Supplies	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 2,500.00
Grants	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL EXPENSES - POLICE DONATIONS	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 2,500.00

Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY24 Proposed
Net Income	\$ (9,300.00)	\$ (9,300.00)	\$ (800.00)
FUND BALANCE	\$ 4,355.70	\$ 4,355.70	\$ 3,555.70

**CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT****REVENUES - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT - 310**

Investment Income	\$ 3,140.00	\$ -	\$ -
Contributions	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL REVENUES - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT	\$ 3,140.00	\$ -	\$ -

**EXPENSES - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT - 310**

Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Capital Outlay	\$ 25,000.00	\$ 25,000.00	\$ 45,000.00
TOTAL EXPENSES - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT	\$ 25,000.00	\$ 25,000.00	\$ 45,000.00
Net Income	\$ (21,860.00)	\$ (25,000.00)	\$ (45,000.00)
FUND BALANCE	\$ 92,140.00	\$ 89,000.00	\$ 69,000.00

**PARK IMPROVEMENT****REVENUES - PARK IMPROVEMENT - 320**

Fines and Fees	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Intergovernmental	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Donations	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 10,000.00
TOTAL REVENUES - PARK IMPROVEMENT	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 10,000.00

**EXPENSES - PARK IMPROVEMENT - 320**

Contractual Services	\$ 30,000.00	\$ 30,000.00	\$ 30,000.00
Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ 9,700.00	\$ 15,000.00
TOTAL EXPENSES - PARK IMPROVEMENT	\$ 30,000.00	\$ 39,700.00	\$ 45,000.00
Net Income	\$ (30,000.00)	\$ (39,700.00)	\$ (35,000.00)
FUND BALANCE	\$ 69,696.79	\$ 59,996.79	\$ 24,996.79

**VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT REPLACEMENT****REVENUES - VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT REPLACEMENT - 330**

Intergovernmental	\$ -	\$ 5,000.00	\$ -
Miscellaneous	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 16,000.00
Transfers	\$ 75,000.00	\$ 257,500.00	\$ 63,850.00
TOTAL REVENUES -VEHICLE/EQUIP REPLACE	\$ 95,000.00	\$ 282,500.00	\$ 79,850.00

**EXPENSES - VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT REPLACEMENT - 330**

Capital Outlay	\$ 190,000.00	\$ 222,650.00	\$ 142,000.00
TOTAL EXPENSES -VEHICLE/EQUIP REPLACE	\$ 190,000.00	\$ 222,650.00	\$ 142,000.00
Net Income	\$ (95,000.00)	\$ 59,850.00	\$ (62,150.00)
FUND BALANCE	\$ (81,408.27)	\$ 73,441.73	\$ (4,708.27)

**PUBLIC SAFETY BUILDING****REVENUES - PUBLIC SAFETY BUILDING - 350**

Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY24 Proposed
Investment Income	\$ 1,375.52	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 24,500.00
TOTAL REVENUES - PUBLIC SAFETY BLDG	\$ 1,375.52	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 24,500.00
<b>EXPENSES - PUBLIC SAFETY BUILDING - 350</b>			
TOTAL EXPENSES - PUBLIC SAFETY BLDG	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Net Income	\$ 1,375.52	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 24,500.00
FUND BALANCE	\$ 688,354.81	\$ 697,979.29	\$ 722,479.29

## ROAD IMPROVEMENT

<b>REVENUES - ROAD IMPROVEMENT - 370</b>			
Investment Income	\$ 2,972.79	\$ 28,000.00	\$ 34,500.00
Intergovernmental	\$ 194,036.00	\$ 85,000.00	\$ 1,825,000.00
Contributions	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Transfers	\$ 585,860.00	\$ 435,845.00	\$ 428,700.00
TOTAL REVENUES - ROAD IMPROVEMENT	\$ 782,868.79	\$ 548,845.00	\$ 2,288,200.00
<b>EXPENSES - ROAD IMPROVEMENT -370</b>			
Contractual Services	\$ 90,000.00	\$ 90,000.00	\$ 1,940,000.00
Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ 950,000.00	\$ 500,000.00
TOTAL EXPENSES - ROAD IMPROVEMENT	\$ 90,000.00	\$ 1,040,000.00	\$ 2,440,000.00
Net Income	\$ 692,868.79	\$ (491,155.00)	\$ (151,800.00)
FUND BALANCE	\$ 1,030,213.58	\$ 986,189.79	\$ 834,389.79

## COVID GRANT

<b>REVENUES - COVID GRANT - 510</b>			
Investment Income	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 750.00	\$ -
Intergovernmental	\$ 187,821.00	\$ -	\$ -
Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL REVENUES -COVID GRANT	\$ 189,321.00	\$ 750.00	\$ -
<b>EXPENSES - COVID GRANT - 510</b>			
Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Grants	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Capital Outlay	\$ 194,036.41	\$ 305,000.00	\$ 73,850.00
TOTAL EXPENSES -VEHICLE/EQUIP REPLACE	\$ 194,036.41	\$ 305,000.00	\$ 73,850.00
Net Income	\$ (4,715.41)	\$ (304,250.00)	\$ (73,850.00)
FUND BALANCE	\$ 373,387.60	\$ 73,853.01	\$ 3.01

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - GENERAL FUND - 100</b>					
100-40100	Sales Tax Revenue	Sales Tax	\$ 3,400,000.00	\$ 3,050,000.00	\$ 3,000,000.00
100-40110	Mixed Beverage Tax Revenue	Sales Tax	\$ 19,000.00	\$ 23,000.00	\$ 25,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Sales Tax</b>	<b>\$ 3,419,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,073,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,025,000.00</b>
100-40120	Franchise Tax Telecom	Franchise Taxes	\$ 3,500.00	\$ 3,500.00	\$ 3,300.00
100-40121	Franchise Tax Waste	Franchise Taxes	\$ 24,750.00	\$ 26,000.00	\$ 27,300.00
100-40122	Franchise Tax Electric	Franchise Taxes	\$ 99,500.00	\$ 141,000.00	\$ 148,050.00
100-40123	Franchise Tax Gas	Franchise Taxes	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 28,500.00	\$ 30,780.00
100-40124	Franchise Tax Mustang SUD	Franchise Taxes	\$ 19,000.00	\$ 28,500.00	\$ 29,925.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Franchise Taxes</b>	<b>\$ 166,750.00</b>	<b>\$ 227,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 239,355.00</b>
100-40200	Development/Platting/Permit Fees	Licenses & Permits	\$ 47,500.00	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 30,000.00
100-40201	Infrastructure Inspection Fees	Licenses & Permits	\$ 68,000.00	\$ 72,000.00	\$ 75,000.00
100-40202	Residential Bldg Permits and Inspectio	Licenses & Permits	\$ 90,000.00	\$ 55,000.00	\$ 40,000.00
100-40203	Commercial Bldg Permits and Inspecti	Licenses & Permits	\$ 100,000.00	\$ 50,000.00	\$ 50,000.00
100-40204	Septic Permits and Fees	Licenses & Permits	\$ 8,500.00	\$ 3,000.00	\$ 3,250.00
100-40206	Health Inspection and Fees	Licenses & Permits	\$ 17,000.00	\$ 22,000.00	\$ 29,000.00
100-40207	Alcohol Permit/License	Licenses & Permits	\$ 1,200.00	\$ 5,095.00	\$ 5,000.00
100-40208	Signs Permit and Fees	Licenses & Permits	\$ 2,800.00	\$ 6,000.00	\$ 6,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Licenses &amp; Permits</b>	<b>\$ 335,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 233,095.00</b>	<b>\$ 238,250.00</b>
100-40210	Municipal Court Fines	Court Revenue	\$ 190,000.00	\$ 178,000.00	\$ 190,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Court Revenue</b>	<b>\$ 190,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 178,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 190,000.00</b>
100-40300	Administrative Fees	Fines & Fees	\$ 17,500.00	\$ 24,000.00	\$ 25,000.00
100-40314	Credit Card Processing Fee	Fines & Fees	\$ 2,500.00	\$ 3,000.00	\$ 3,500.00
100-40330	Founder's Day Revenue	Fines & Fees	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 500.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Fines &amp; Fees</b>	<b>\$ 20,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 27,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 29,000.00</b>
100-40304	MDD Contribution	Contributions	\$ 22,250.00	\$ 27,605.00	\$ 57,500.00
100-40500	Developer Contributions	Contributions	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Contributions</b>	<b>\$ 22,250.00</b>	<b>\$ 27,605.00</b>	<b>\$ 57,500.00</b>
100-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 40,000.00	\$ 47,500.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Investment Income</b>	<b>\$ 5,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 40,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 47,500.00</b>
100-40315	Miscellaneous Income	Miscellaneous	\$ -	\$ 1,200.00	\$ 1,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Miscellaneous</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 1,200.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,000.00</b>
100-40410	Intergovernmental Revenue	Intergovernmental	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Intergovernmental</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
100-40455	Donations	Donations	\$ -	\$ 18,000.00	\$ 20,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Donations</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 18,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 20,000.00</b>
100-40610	Insurance Proceeds	Other Income	\$ -	\$ 13,500.00	\$ -
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Other Income</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 13,500.00</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
100-40910	Transfers In	Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Transfers</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - GENERAL FUND</b>			<b>\$ 4,158,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,838,900.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,847,605.00</b>

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>EXPENSES - GENERAL FUND - 100</b>					
<b>ADMINISTRATION - 110</b>					
100-110-51101	Payroll Expenses: Wages	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 481,000.00	\$ 475,000.00	\$ 510,000.00
100-110-51102	Overtime	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 500.00	\$ 800.00	\$ 800.00
100-110-51105	Longevity Pay	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 5,950.00	\$ 950.00	\$ 1,200.00
100-110-51109	Auto Allowance	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 1,800.00	\$ 1,800.00	\$ 1,800.00
100-110-51210	Payroll Expenses: Company Contributi	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 38,480.00	\$ 47,500.00	\$ 52,500.00
100-110-51215	Payroll Expenses: Taxes	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 37,750.00	\$ 37,250.00	\$ 41,500.00
100-110-51216	Employee Health Benefits	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 48,450.00	\$ 47,000.00	\$ 55,000.00
100-110-51220	Workers Compensation	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 500.00	\$ 2,750.00
100-110-51230	Unemployment	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 1,600.00	\$ 1,600.00	\$ 200.00
100-110-51250	Mileage Reimbursements-Non Tax	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 150.00	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00
100-110-51255	Miscellaneous Reimbursements	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Personnel and Benefi</b>	<b>\$ 617,780.00</b>	<b>\$ 612,600.00</b>	<b>\$ 665,950.00</b>
100-110-52014	Office Supplies	Supplies	\$ 7,500.00	\$ 6,500.00	\$ 6,500.00
100-110-52030	Postage	Supplies	\$ 1,250.00	\$ 1,250.00	\$ 1,250.00
100-110-52100	Minor Tools and Equipment	Supplies	\$ 2,200.00	\$ 5,500.00	\$ 5,250.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>		<b>\$ 10,950.00</b>	<b>\$ 13,250.00</b>	<b>\$ 13,000.00</b>
100-110-53001	Accounting and Auditing Fees	Contractual Services	\$ 15,000.00	\$ 15,000.00	\$ 18,000.00
100-110-53002	Advertising and Promotion	Contractual Services	\$ 12,000.00	\$ 12,000.00	\$ 3,000.00
100-110-53004	Software	Contractual Services	\$ 28,000.00	\$ 28,000.00	\$ 30,000.00
100-110-53006	Codification Services	Contractual Services	\$ 3,250.00	\$ 3,250.00	\$ 4,250.00
100-110-53010	Property and Liability Insurance	Contractual Services	\$ 3,000.00	\$ 3,425.00	\$ 6,600.00
100-110-53012	Legal Fees	Contractual Services	\$ 75,000.00	\$ 75,000.00	\$ 75,000.00
100-110-53015	Dues and Subscriptions	Contractual Services	\$ 1,000.00	\$ 1,000.00	\$ 1,000.00
100-110-53016	Public Notices/Dues	Contractual Services	\$ 1,000.00	\$ 2,500.00	\$ 2,000.00
100-110-53022	Training and Travel	Contractual Services	\$ 14,000.00	\$ 14,000.00	\$ 17,750.00
100-110-53028	Lovetts 380 Agreement	Contractual Services		\$ -	\$ -
100-110-53030	Credit Card Charge	Contractual Services	\$ 2,500.00	\$ 3,000.00	\$ 3,500.00
100-110-53033	Community Events	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 20,000.00
100-110-53045	Lease and CAM Pmts - Town Hall	Contractual Services	\$ 68,900.00	\$ 68,900.00	\$ 71,000.00
100-110-53050	Careflite Services	Contractual Services	\$ 2,400.00	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 2,000.00
100-110-53055	City of Aubrey Library Fund	Contractual Services	\$ 10,000.00	\$ 10,000.00	\$ 5,000.00
100-110-53080	Engineering Services	Contractual Services	\$ 62,500.00	\$ 30,000.00	\$ 40,000.00
100-110-53081	Information Technology Services	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
100-110-53083	Professional Services	Contractual Services	\$ 83,500.00	\$ 83,500.00	\$ 45,000.00
100-110-53110	Utilities	Contractual Services	\$ 6,750.00	\$ 7,250.00	\$ 7,750.00
100-110-53225	Interlocal Fire	Contractual Services	\$ 452,300.00	\$ 452,300.00	\$ 463,607.50
100-110-53610	Election Expense	Contractual Services	\$ 6,500.00	\$ 4,200.00	\$ 6,500.00
100-110-53800	Sales Tax Overpmt 12/21 to 5/25 Payt	Contractual Services	\$ 20,304.00	\$ 20,304.00	\$ 20,304.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Contractual Services</b>	<b>\$ 867,904.00</b>	<b>\$ 855,629.00</b>	<b>\$ 842,261.50</b>
100-110-54010	Building Maintenance/Cleaning	Maintenance	\$ 6,000.00	\$ 17,500.00	\$ 15,000.00
100-110-54020	Vehicles Maintenance	Maintenance	\$ 2,300.00	\$ 1,500.00	\$ -
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Maintenance</b>	<b>\$ 8,300.00</b>	<b>\$ 19,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 15,000.00</b>
100-110-58007	Capital Improvements	Capital Outlay	\$ 6,500.00	\$ 4,500.00	\$ -
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Capital Outlay</b>	<b>\$ 6,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 4,500.00</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>ADMINISTRATION - 110</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 1,511,434.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,504,979.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,536,211.50</b>



Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>MUNICIPAL COURT - 210</b>					
100-210-51101	Payroll Expenses: Wages	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 9,500.00	\$ 10,500.00	\$ 12,000.00
100-210-51215	Payroll Expenses: Taxes	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 741.00	\$ 750.00	\$ 936.00
100-210-51230	Unemployment	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 14.25	\$ 17.50	\$ 18.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Personnel and Benefi</b>	<b>\$ 10,255.25</b>	<b>\$ 11,267.50</b>	<b>\$ 12,954.00</b>
100-210-52014	Office Supplies	Supplies	\$ 2,750.00	\$ 2,400.00	\$ 2,400.00
100-210-52020	Court Supplies	Supplies	\$ 1,250.00	\$ 750.00	\$ 1,000.00
100-210-52030	Postage	Supplies	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 1,700.00	\$ 1,700.00
100-210-52100	Minor Tools and Epuipment	Supplies	\$ 1,350.00	\$ 1,000.00	\$ 1,350.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Supplies</b>	<b>\$ 7,350.00</b>	<b>\$ 5,850.00</b>	<b>\$ 6,450.00</b>
100-210-53004	Software	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ 7,500.00	\$ 10,750.00
100-210-53015	Dues and Subscriptions	Contractual Services	\$ 250.00	\$ 250.00	\$ 250.00
100-210-53022	Training and Travel	Contractual Services	\$ 500.00	\$ 300.00	\$ 300.00
100-210-53075	Prosecutor	Contractual Services	\$ 21,500.00	\$ 22,500.00	\$ 24,000.00
100-210-53076	Jury	Contractual Services	\$ 500.00	\$ 350.00	\$ 350.00
100-210-53077	Interpreter	Contractual Services	\$ 750.00	\$ 400.00	\$ 400.00
100-210-53078	Arrest/Jail Fees	Contractual Services	\$ 500.00	\$ 300.00	\$ 300.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Contractual Services</b>	<b>\$ 24,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 31,600.00</b>	<b>\$ 36,350.00</b>
100-210-58010	Capital Equipment	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Capital Outlay</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>MUNICIPAL COURT - 210</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 41,605.25</b>	<b>\$ 48,717.50</b>	<b>\$ 55,754.00</b>
<b>POLICE -310</b>					
100-310-51101	Payroll Expenses: Wages	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 932,100.00	\$ 845,000.00	\$ 988,000.00
100-310-51102	Overtime	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 36,000.00	\$ 40,000.00	\$ 43,000.00
100-310-51105	Longevity Pay	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 1,750.00	\$ 1,750.00	\$ 2,000.00
100-310-51108	Incentive Pay	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 7,000.00	\$ 3,750.00	\$ 8,340.00
100-310-51210	Payroll Expenses: Company Contributi	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 74,568.00	\$ 83,500.00	\$ 95,000.00
100-310-51215	Payroll Expenses: Taxes	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 72,300.00	\$ 71,500.00	\$ 84,000.00
100-310-51216	Employee Health Benefits	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 105,300.00	\$ 102,500.00	\$ 110,000.00
100-310-51220	Workers Compensation	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 39,000.00	\$ 35,000.00	\$ 41,500.00
100-310-51230	Unemployment	Personnel and Benefi	\$ 4,150.00	\$ 500.00	\$ 500.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Personnel and Benefi</b>	<b>\$ 1,272,168.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,183,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,372,340.00</b>
100-310-52005	Uniforms	Supplies	\$ 10,000.00	\$ 7,500.00	\$ 8,000.00
100-310-52010	Law Enforcement Supplies	Supplies	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 4,000.00	\$ 2,000.00
100-310-52014	Office Supplies	Supplies	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,000.00
100-310-52015	Evidence Supplies	Supplies	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 1,500.00
100-310-52030	Postage	Supplies	\$ 1,300.00	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 1,300.00
100-310-52050	Fuel	Supplies	\$ 35,000.00	\$ 31,000.00	\$ 40,000.00
100-310-52100	Minor Tools and Equipment	Supplies	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,500.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Supplies</b>	<b>\$ 63,300.00</b>	<b>\$ 56,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 63,300.00</b>
100-310-53004	Software	Contractual Services	\$ 19,400.00	\$ 15,500.00	\$ 15,500.00
100-310-53010	Property and Liability Insurance	Contractual Services	\$ 10,000.00	\$ 9,500.00	\$ 15,500.00
100-310-53012	Legal Fees	Contractual Services	\$ 2,500.00	\$ 2,500.00	\$ 2,500.00
100-310-53015	Dues and Subscriptions	Contractual Services	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 1,645.00
100-310-53022	Training and Travel	Contractual Services	\$ 12,200.00	\$ 9,500.00	\$ 12,300.00
100-310-53033	Community Events	Contractual Services	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 3,500.00	\$ 3,500.00

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
100-310-53081	Information Technology Services	Contractual Services	\$ 20,500.00	\$ 20,500.00	\$ 19,500.00
100-310-53083	Professional Services	Contractual Services	\$ 13,500.00	\$ 8,500.00	\$ 9,700.00
100-310-53091	Landscaping	Contractual Services	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 1,000.00	\$ 3,000.00
100-310-53110	Utilities	Contractual Services	\$ 8,000.00	\$ 10,000.00	\$ 10,000.00
100-310-53130	Telephone Mobile	Contractual Services	\$ 10,000.00	\$ 8,000.00	\$ 10,000.00
100-310-53210	Animal Control	Contractual Services	\$ 14,700.00	\$ 16,000.00	\$ 16,500.00
100-310-53230	County Public Safety Contracts	Contractual Services	\$ 31,800.00	\$ 30,000.00	\$ 37,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Contractual Services</b>	<b>\$ 154,100.00</b>	<b>\$ 136,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 156,645.00</b>
100-310-54010	Building Maintenance/Cleaning	Maintenance	\$ 21,000.00	\$ 25,000.00	\$ 10,600.00
100-310-54020	Vehicles Maintenance	Maintenance	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 28,000.00	\$ 30,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Maintenance</b>	<b>\$ 41,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 53,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 40,600.00</b>
<b>POLICE - 310</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 1,530,568.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,428,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 1,632,885.00</b>
<b>PARKS &amp; RECREATION - 410</b>					
100-410-53002	Advertising and Promotion	Contractual Services	\$ 2,740.00	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 2,000.00
100-410-53035	Park Events	Contractual Services	\$ 10,500.00	\$ 10,500.00	\$ 10,500.00
100-410-53110	Utilities	Contractual Services	\$ 750.00	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 1,800.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Contractual Services</b>	<b>\$ 13,990.00</b>	<b>\$ 14,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 14,300.00</b>
100-410-54030	Park Maintenance	Maintenance	\$ 18,000.00	\$ 18,000.00	\$ 7,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Maintenance</b>	<b>\$ 18,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 18,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 7,000.00</b>
<b>PARKS &amp; RECREATION - 410</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 31,990.00</b>	<b>\$ 32,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 21,300.00</b>
<b>COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT - 510</b>					
100-510-53084	Code Enforcement	Contractual Services	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 2,000.00	\$ 3,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Contractual Services</b>	<b>\$ 2,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 2,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,000.00</b>
<b>COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT - 510</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 2,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 2,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,000.00</b>
<b>INSPECTIONS - 520</b>					
100-520-53080	Engineering Inspection Services	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 20,000.00
100-520-53085	Res & Com Building Review & Insp	Contractual Services	\$ 6,500.00	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 20,000.00
100-520-53090	Sanitation Services	Contractual Services	\$ 15,000.00	\$ 13,000.00	\$ 18,000.00
100-520-53095	Fire Inspection Services	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ 4,500.00	\$ 5,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Contractual Services</b>	<b>\$ 21,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 57,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 63,000.00</b>
<b>INSPECTIONS - 520</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 21,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 57,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 63,000.00</b>
<b>PUBLIC WORKS - 610</b>					
100-610-53060	Street Materials and Signs	Contractual Services	\$ 8,000.00	\$ 8,000.00	\$ 8,000.00
100-610-53065	Mowing and ROW Cleanup	Contractual Services	\$ 38,500.00	\$ 55,000.00	\$ 75,000.00
100-610-53070	Street Repairs - Maintenance *	Contractual Services	\$ 50,000.00	\$ 50,000.00	\$ 50,000.00
100-610-53110	Utilities	Contractual Services	\$ 2,600.00	\$ 3,000.00	\$ 3,000.00
	<b>Subtotal</b>	<b>Contractual Services</b>	<b>\$ 99,100.00</b>	<b>\$ 116,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 136,000.00</b>
<b>PUBLIC WORKS - 610</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 99,100.00</b>	<b>\$ 116,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 136,000.00</b>

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>TRANSFERS OUT - 710</b>					
100-710-59100	Transfers Out	Transfers	\$ -		\$ -
<b>TRANSFERS OUT - 710</b>			<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>DECISION PACKAGE - OPERATING EXPENSE</b>					
	Operating Expense Decision Package	n/a		\$ -	
<b>TOTAL</b>			<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>TOTAL OPERATING EXPENSES - GENERAL FUND</b>			<b>\$ 3,238,197.25</b>	<b>\$ 3,189,696.50</b>	<b>\$ 3,448,150.50</b>
Net Operating Income			\$ 919,802.75	\$ 649,203.50	\$ 399,454.50
<b>TRANSFERS OUT - 710 - FUND BALANCE - CAPITAL</b>					
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Vehicle/Equip Repl.	Transfers	\$ 75,000.00	\$ 37,500.00	\$ -
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Pub. Saf. Bldg	Transfers	\$ -		\$ -
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Park Imp	Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Road Imp. (.1429)*	Transfers	\$ 485,860.00	\$ 435,845.00	\$ 428,700.00
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Road Imp.	Transfers	\$ 100,000.00	\$ -	\$ -
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Cap Imp.	Transfers			\$ -
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Legal Contingency	Transfers	\$ -		\$ -
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Court Tech	Transfers	\$ -		\$ -
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Court Security	Transfers	\$ -		\$ -
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Other Rest. Court	Transfers	\$ -		\$ -
100-710-59100	Transfers Out - Police Donations	Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
*For actuals, included in Transfers Out					
<b>TOTAL TRANSFERS OUT</b>			<b>\$ 660,860.00</b>	<b>\$ 473,345.00</b>	<b>\$ 428,700.00</b>
Income			\$ 258,942.75	\$ 175,858.50	\$ (29,245.50)
Beginning Balance			\$ 1,571,336.00	\$ 1,720,265.76	\$ 1,896,124.26
Ending Balance			\$ 1,720,265.76	\$ 1,979,208.51	\$ 1,866,878.76
% Reserve			61%	59%	54%
Days of Reserve			223.09	216.98	197.62

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - LEGAL CONTINGENCY FUND - 150</b>					
150-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ 1,012.30	\$ 7,000.00	\$ 15,000.00
150-40910	Transfers In	Transfer	\$ -		\$ -
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - LEGAL CONTINGENCY FUND</b>			<b>\$ 1,012.30</b>	<b>\$ 7,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 15,000.00</b>
<b>EXPENSES - LEGAL CONTINGENCY FUND - 150</b>					
150-110-53083	Professional Services	Contractual Services			
150-110-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$ -		\$ -
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - LEGAL CONTINGENCY FUND</b>			<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
Net Income			\$ 1,012.30	\$ 7,000.00	\$ 15,000.00
Beginning Balance FY 22		\$ 256,147.75	\$ 505,964.70	\$ 505,964.70	\$ 512,964.70
Ending Balance FY 22		\$ 505,964.70	\$ 506,977.00	\$ 512,964.70	\$ 527,964.70

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - MUNICIPAL DEVELOPMENT FUND - 210</b>					
210-40100	Sales Tax Revenue	Sales Tax	\$ 500,000.00	\$ 445,000.00	\$ 438,000.00
210-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ 1,750.00	\$ 13,000.00	\$ 22,100.00
210-40350	Rental Income	Miscellaneous	\$ 15,000.00	\$ 15,000.00	\$ 19,200.00
210-40620	Debt Proceeds	Other Income	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
210-40910	Transfers In	Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - MUNICIPAL DEVELOPMENT FUND</b>			<b>\$ 516,750.00</b>	<b>\$ 473,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 479,300.00</b>
<b>EXPENSES - MUNICIPAL DEVELOPMENT FUND - 210</b>					
210-110-53002	Advertising and Promotion	Contractual Services	\$ 15,000.00	\$ 15,000.00	\$ 35,000.00
210-110-53004	Software	Contractual Services	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 1,700.00	\$ 5,000.00
210-110-53007	Administrative Expenses	Contractual Services	\$ 24,000.00	\$ 29,355.00	\$ 60,000.00
210-110-53010	Property and Liability Insurance	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,500.00
210-110-53015	Dues and Subscriptions	Contractual Services	\$ 4,000.00	\$ 4,000.00	\$ 4,000.00
210-110-53022	Training and Travel	Contractual Services	\$ 7,500.00	\$ 7,500.00	\$ 12,000.00
210-110-53025	MDD Business Grant	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 40,000.00
210-110-53100	Planning/Consulting	Contractual Services	\$ 65,000.00	\$ 65,000.00	\$ 100,000.00
210-110-53110	Utilities	Contractual Services	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 1,500.00
210-110-53805	Property Taxes	Contractual Services	\$ 13,600.00	\$ 13,600.00	\$ 14,000.00
210-110-54018	Rental Property Repair	Maintenance	\$ 40,000.00	\$ 40,000.00	\$ 10,000.00
210-110-56010	Debt Principal	Debt Service	\$ 33,591.46	\$ 33,591.46	\$ 33,591.46
210-110-56020	Debt Interest	Debt Service	\$ 16,427.82	\$ 16,427.82	\$ 16,427.82
210-110-56030	Debt Issuance Costs	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
210-110-58007	Capital Improvements	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
210-710-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - MUNICIPAL DEVELOPMENT FUND</b>			<b>\$ 222,119.28</b>	<b>\$ 247,674.28</b>	<b>\$ 333,019.28</b>
Net Income			\$ 294,630.72	\$ 225,325.72	\$ 146,280.72
Beginning Balance FY 21			\$ 530,343.00	\$ 736,157.13	\$ 961,482.85
Ending Balance FY 22			\$ 736,157.13	\$ 1,030,787.85	\$ 1,107,763.57

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - COURT TECH -240</b>					
240-40215	Court Technology Revenue	Court Revenue	\$ 7,500.00	\$ 4,800.00	\$ 4,800.00
240-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
	Transfer In - NEMC Funds		\$ -		\$ -
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - COURT TECH FUND</b>			<b>\$ 7,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 4,800.00</b>	<b>\$ 4,800.00</b>
<b>EXPENSES - COURT TECH FUND - 240</b>					
240-210-52510	Court Technology	Municipal Court	\$ 9,500.00	\$ 13,500.00	\$ 3,950.00
240-210-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - COURT TECH FUND</b>			<b>\$ 9,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 13,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 3,950.00</b>
Net Income			\$ (2,000.00)	\$ (8,700.00)	\$ 850.00
Beginning Balance FY 22			\$ 10,498.00	\$ 10,498.00	\$ 1,798.00
Ending Balance FY 22			\$ 10,498.00	\$ 1,798.00	\$ 2,648.00

## 241 - COURT SECURITY

Item 21 p. 16 of 26

				FY 24	
Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	Proposed
REVENUES - COURT SECURITY -241					
241-40220	Court Security Revenue	Court Revenue	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 6,125.00
241-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ -	\$ 25.00	\$ -
	Transfer In		\$ -		\$ -
TOTAL REVENUES - COURT TECH FUND			\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,650.00	\$ 6,125.00
EXPENSES - COURT SECURITY FUND - 241					
241-210-52520	Court Security	Municipal Court	\$ 4,500.00	\$ 4,500.00	\$ 4,500.00
241-210-53022	Training and Travel	Contractual Services	\$ 500.00	\$ 500.00	\$ 500.00
241-210-53072	Bailiff Fees	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
241-210-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 30,000.00
TOTAL EXPENSES - COURT TECH FUND			\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,000.00	\$ 35,000.00
Net Income			\$ 625.00	\$ 650.00	\$ (28,875.00)
Beginning Balance FY 22		\$ -	\$ 32,993.57	\$ 32,993.57	\$ 33,643.57
Ending Balance FY 22		\$ 32,993.57	\$ 33,618.57	\$ 33,643.57	\$ 4,768.57



Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - TRUANCY - 242</b>					
242-40242	Truancy Prevention Revenue	Court Revenue	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00
242-40910	Transfers In	Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - TRUANCY FUND</b>			<b>\$ 5,625.00</b>	<b>\$ 5,625.00</b>	<b>\$ 5,625.00</b>
<b>EXPENSES - TRUANCY -242</b>					
	<i>Placeholder</i>	Contractual Services	\$ -		\$ -
	<i>Placeholder</i>	Capital Outlay	\$ -		\$ -
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - JURY FUND</b>			<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
Net Income			\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00	\$ 5,625.00
Beginning Balance FY 21		\$ -	\$ 18,448.93	\$ 18,448.93	\$ 24,073.93
Ending Balance FY 22		\$ 18,448.93	\$ 24,073.93	\$ 24,073.93	\$ 29,698.93

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - JURY - 243</b>					
243-40245	Jury Fees	Court Revenue	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00
243-40910	Transfers In	Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - JURY FUND</b>			<b>\$ 100.00</b>	<b>\$ 100.00</b>	<b>\$ 100.00</b>
<b>EXPENSES - JURY - 243</b>					
	<i>Placeholder</i>	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
	<i>Placeholder</i>	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - JURY FUND</b>			<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
Net Income			\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00	\$ 100.00
Beginning Balance			\$ -	\$ 368.80	\$ 468.80
Ending Balance FY 22			\$ 368.80	\$ 468.80	\$ 568.80

## 265 - POLICE DONATIONS

Item 21 p. 19 of 26

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
REVENUES - POLICE DONATIONS FUND - 265					
265-40250	Child Safety Revenue	Contributions	\$ -	\$ 1,700.00	\$ 1,700.00
265-40420	Police Donations	Donations	\$ 1,700.00	\$ -	
265-40910	Grant Revenue	Intergovernmental	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL REVENUES - LEOSE FUND			\$ 1,700.00	\$ 1,700.00	\$ 1,700.00
EXPENSES - POLICE DONATIONS FUND - 265					
265-310-52014	Office Supplies	Supplies	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
265-310-52530	Donated Police Expenditures	Supplies	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 2,500.00
265-310-55050	Grant Expenses	Grants		\$ -	
265-310-58010	Capital Equipment	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
TOTAL EXPENSES - POLICE DONATIONS FUND			\$ 11,000.00	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 2,500.00
Net Income			\$ (9,300.00)	\$ (9,300.00)	\$ (800.00)
Beginning Balance FY 21		\$ -	\$ 13,655.70	\$ 13,655.70	\$ 4,355.70
Ending Balance FY 22		\$ 13,655.70	\$ 4,355.70	\$ 4,355.70	\$ 3,555.70

310 - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENTS

Item 21 p. 20 of 26

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT FUND - 310</b>					
310-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ 3,140.00	\$ -	
310-40500	Developer Contributions	Contributions	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
310-40910	Transfers In	Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT FUND</b>			<b>\$ 3,140.00</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>EXPENSES - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT FUND - 310</b>					
310-610-53083	Professional Services	Contractual Services			
310-610-58007	Capital Improvements	Capital Outlay	\$ 25,000.00	\$ 25,000.00	\$ 45,000.00
310-110-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$ -		\$ -
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT FUND</b>			<b>\$ 25,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 25,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 45,000.00</b>
Net Income			\$ (21,860.00)	\$ (25,000.00)	\$ (45,000.00)
Beginning Balance FY 22			\$ 39,000.00	\$ 114,000.00	\$ 114,000.00
Ending Balance FY 22			\$ 114,000.00	\$ 92,140.00	\$ 69,000

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved		FY 23 Amend 1		FY 24 Proposed	
REVENUES - PARK IMPROVEMENT FUND - 320								
	Administrative Fees-							
320-40301	Unpermitted Tree Kill Fine	Fines and Fees	\$	-	\$	-	\$ -	
320-40450	Grant Revenue	Intergovernmental	\$	-	\$	-	\$ -	
320-40455	Donations	Donations	\$	-	\$	-	\$ -	
320-40910	Transfers In - GF	Transfers	\$	-	\$	-	\$ -	
320-40910	Transfers In -COVID	Transfers	\$	-	\$	-	\$ 10,000.00	
TOTAL REVENUES - CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT FUND			\$	-	\$	-	\$ 10,000.00	
EXPENSES - PARK IMPROVEMENT FUND - 310								
320-410-53083	Professional Services	Contractual Services	\$	30,000.00	\$	30,000.00	\$ 30,000.00	
320-410-58007	Capital Improvements	Capital Outlay	\$	-	\$	9,700.00	\$ 15,000.00	
320-410-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$	-	\$	-	\$ -	
320-110-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$	-	\$	-	\$ -	
TOTAL EXPENSES - PARK IMPROVEMENT FUND			\$	30,000.00	\$	39,700.00	\$ 45,000.00	
Net Income			\$	(30,000.00)	\$	(39,700.00)	\$ (35,000.00)	
Beginning Balance FY 22		\$	85,025.00	\$	99,696.79	\$	99,696.79	\$ 59,996.79
Ending Balance FY 22		\$	99,696.79	\$	69,696.79	\$	59,996.79	\$ 24,996.79

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	As of 5/31/23	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT REPLACEMENT FUND - 330</b>						
330-40315	Miscellaneous Income	Miscellaneous	\$ 20,000.00	\$ -	\$ 20,000.00	\$ 16,000.00
330-40450	Grant Revenue	Intergovernmental		\$ 5,000.00	\$ 5,000.00	
330-40452	Grant Revenue - CARES Act	Intergovernmental		\$ -		
330-40610	Insurance Proceeds	Other Income	\$ -		\$ -	\$ -
330-40910	Transfers In - COVID	Transfers	\$ -	\$ 123,899.75	\$ 220,000.00	\$ 63,850.00
330-40910	Transfers In - GF	Transfers	\$ 75,000.00		\$ 37,500.00	\$ -
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - VEHICLE REPLACEMENT FUND</b>			<b>\$ 95,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 128,899.75</b>	<b>\$ 282,500.00</b>	<b>\$ 63,850.00</b>
<b>EXPENSES - VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT REPLACEMENT FUND - 310</b>						
330-110-59100	Transfer Out	Capital Outlay				
330-110-58010	Capital Equipment	Capital Outlay	\$ 70,000.00	\$ -	\$ 1,400.00	\$ 12,000.00
330-110-58011	Capital Equipment - COVID Funds	Capital Outlay		\$ 92,933.68	\$ 101,250.00	
330-110-58010	Capital - Vehicles	Capital Outlay	\$ 120,000.00	\$ 94,734.00	\$ 120,000.00	\$ 130,000.00
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - VEHICLE/EQUIPMENT REPLACEMENT FUND</b>			<b>\$ 190,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 187,667.68</b>	<b>\$ 222,650.00</b>	<b>\$ 142,000.00</b>
Net Income			\$ (95,000.00)	\$ (58,767.93)	\$ 59,850.00	\$ (78,150.00)
Beginning Balance			\$ -	\$ 13,591.73	\$ 13,591.73	\$ 73,441.73
Ending Balance FY 22			\$ 13,591.73	\$ (81,408.27)	\$ 73,441.73	\$ (4,708.27)

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - PUBLIC SAFETY BUILDING FUND - 350</b>					
350-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ 1,375.52	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 24,500.00
350-40500	Developer Contributions	Contributions	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
350-40910	Transfers In	Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - PUBLIC SAFETY BUILDING FUND</b>			<b>\$ 1,375.52</b>	<b>\$ 11,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 24,500.00</b>
<b>EXPENSES - PUBLIC SAFETY BUILDING FUND - 350</b>					
350-110-53083	Professional Services	Contractual Services		\$ -	
350-110-58007	Capital Improvements	Capital Outlay		\$ -	
350-110-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - PUBLIC SAFETY BUILDING FUND</b>			<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
Net Income			\$ 1,375.52	\$ 11,000.00	\$ 24,500.00
Beginning Balance			\$ 684,761.30	\$ 686,979.29	\$ 697,979.29
Ending Balance FY 22			\$ 686,979.29	\$ 688,354.81	\$ 722,479.29



## 370 - ROAD IMPROVEMENT

Item 21 p. 24 of 26

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	As of 5/31/23	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - ROAD IMPROVEMENT FUND - 370</b>						
370-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ 2,972.79	\$ 15,483.01	\$ 28,000.00	\$ 34,500.00
370-40410	Intergovernmental Rev - County	Intergovernmental				\$ 1,825,000.00
370-40910	Transfer In - COVID	Intergovernmental	\$ 194,036.00		\$ 85,000.00	\$ -
370-40500	Developer Contributions	Contributions		\$ -	\$ -	
370-40910	Transfers In	Transfers	\$ 100,000.00	\$ (49,964.00)	\$ -	\$ -
370-40910	Transfers In - .1429 of sales tax *	Transfers	\$ 485,860.00	\$ 311,914.31	\$ 435,845.00	\$ 428,700.00
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - ROAD IMPROVEMENT FUND</b>			<b>\$ 782,868.79</b>	<b>\$ 277,433.32</b>	<b>\$ 548,845.00</b>	<b>\$ 2,288,200.00</b>
<b>EXPENSES - ROAD IMPROVEMENT FUND - 370</b>						
370-610-53083	Professional Services	Contractual Services	\$ 90,000.00	\$ 25,159.37	\$ 90,000.00	\$ 115,000.00
370-610-53083	Prof. Serv. - Co. Road Bond	Contractual Services	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,825,000.00
370-610-58007	Capital Improvements	Capital Outlay	\$ 1,140,000.00	\$ 72,094.30	\$ 950,000.00	\$ 500,000.00
370-610-58007	Cap. Imp. - Co Road Bond	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
370-110-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - ROAD IMPROVEMENT FUND</b>			<b>\$ 1,230,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 97,253.67</b>	<b>\$ 1,040,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 2,440,000.00</b>
Net Income			\$ (447,131.21)	\$ 180,179.65	\$ (491,155.00)	\$ (151,800.00)
Beginning Balance			\$ 368,266.96	\$ 1,477,344.79	\$ 1,477,344.79	\$ 986,189.79
Ending Balance			\$ 1,477,344.79	\$ 1,030,213.58	\$ 986,189.79	\$ 834,389.79

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - PID #1 VILLAGES</b>					
400-40190	PID Assessment Income	Assessment Income	\$ 100,405.10	\$ 100,405.10	\$ 100,405.10
400-40191	PID Delinquent Income	Assessment Income			
400-40192	PID Penalty and Interest Income	Assessment Income	\$ -		\$ -
400-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ 200.00	\$ 200.00	\$ 200.00
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - PID #1 VILLAGES FUND</b>			<b>\$ 100,605.10</b>	<b>\$ 100,605.10</b>	<b>\$ 100,605.10</b>
<b>EXPENSES - PID #1 VILLAGES FUND - 370</b>					
400-110-53007	Administrative Expenses	Contractual Services	\$ 5,500.00	\$ 5,500.00	\$ 6,000.00
400-110-53012	Legal Fees	Contractual Services	\$ 500.00	\$ 500.00	\$ 550.00
400-110-53915	Developer Distribution	Contractual Services	\$ 94,000.00	\$ 94,000.00	\$ 94,000.00
400-110-59100	Transfers Out	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - PID #1 VILLAGES</b>			<b>\$ 100,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 100,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 100,550.00</b>
Net Income			\$ 605.10	\$ 605.10	\$ 55.10
Beginning Balance FY 22			\$ 99,516.47	\$ 7,473.89	\$ 8,078.99
Ending Balance FY 22			\$ 7,473.89	\$ 8,078.99	\$ 8,134

Account #	Account Description	Category	FY 23 Approved	FY 23 Amend 1	FY 24 Proposed
<b>REVENUES - COVID FUND - 510</b>					
510-40306	Interest Revenue	Investment Income	\$ 1,500.00	\$ 750.00	\$ -
510-40410	Intergovernmental Revenue	Intergovernmental		\$ -	
510-40450	Grant Revenue	Intergovernmental	\$ 187,821.00	\$ -	\$ -
510-40910	Transfers In	Transfers	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>TOTAL REVENUES - COVID FUND</b>			<b>\$ 189,321.00</b>	<b>\$ 750.00</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>EXPENSES - COVID FUND - 510</b>					
510-110-53030	PayPal Charge (Bank Charge)	Contractual Services	\$ -		\$ -
510-110-53083	Professional Services	Contractual Services		\$ -	
510-110-55050	Grant Expenses	Grants		\$ -	
510-110-58007	Capital Improvements	Capital Outlay	\$ 194,036.41	\$ -	\$ -
510-110-59100	Transfers Out - To Vehicle Replacement	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ 220,000.00	\$ 63,850.00
510-110-59100	Transfers Out - Roads	Capital Outlay		\$ 85,000.00	
510-110-59100	Transfers Out - Park Improvement	Capital Outlay	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 10,000.00
<b>TOTAL EXPENSES - COVID FUND</b>			<b>\$ 194,036.41</b>	<b>\$ 305,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 73,850.00</b>
Net Income			\$ (4,715.41)	\$ (304,250.00)	\$ (73,850.00)
Beginning Balance FY 22			\$ 1,322.46	\$ 378,103.01	\$ 73,853.01
Ending Balance FY 22			\$ 378,103.01	\$ 373,387.60	\$ 73,853.01



# COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

Item 22 p. 1 of 4

Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Discuss and consider a resolution of appointments to the Planning and Zoning Commission, Municipal Development District, and Parks and Recreation Board.

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

Over the past two months, the Town has received the following resignations:

- Vicki Knox, Parks and Recreation Board on June 6, 2023 (term expires June 2025)
- David Lawson, Planning and Zoning Commission on July 24, 2023 (term expires June 2024)
- Bill Berry, Municipal Development District on August 1, 2023 (term expires September 30, 2023)

The Parks and Recreation Board has recommended Erica Cook to fill the unexpired term of Vicki Knox.

Staff has advertised for applications to fill the vacancies and will provide the documents under separate cover.

Recommended Action:

Staff recommends approval of a resolution making appointments to the Planning and Zoning Commission, the Municipal Development District and the Parks and Recreation Board.

Attachments:

Resolution

Applications (Under separate cover)

**RESOLUTION 2023-\_\_\_\_\_**

**A RESOLUTION OF THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS APPOINTING MEMBERS TO FILL UNEXPIRED TERMS ON THE PLANNING AND ZONING COMMISSION, THE MUNICIPAL DEVELOPMENT DISTRICT, AND THE PARKS AND RECREATION BOARD.**

**WHEREAS**, pursuant to Chapter 1 of the Town of Cross Roads Code of Ordinances, the Planning and Zoning Commission, the Municipal Development District, and the Parks and Recreation Board was created for the Town of Cross Roads; and

**WHEREAS**, the Town of Cross Roads desires to designate the persons named herein to fill the unexpired terms immediately upon adoption of this Resolution.

**NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE TOWN COUNCIL OF THE TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS:**

**Section 1.** The above and foregoing premises are true and correct legislative findings and they are incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

**Section 2.** That the following appointment is made to the Cross Roads Planning and Zoning Commission to fill the unexpired term of David Lawson:

\_\_\_\_\_, **Commissioner**      **Term Expires: June 2024**

**Section 3.** That the following appointment is made to the Cross Roads Municipal Development District to fill the unexpired term of Bill Berry:

\_\_\_\_\_, **Place 2**      **Term Expires: September 30, 2023**

**Section 3.** That the following appointment is made to the Cross Roads Parks and Recreation Board to fill the unexpired term of Vicki Knox:

\_\_\_\_\_, **Place 5**      **Term Expires: June 2025**

**Section 4.** That this resolution shall take effective immediately from and after the date of its passage.

**DULY PASSED** by the Town Council of the Town of Cross Roads, Texas, on the **21st** day of **August, 2023**.

**TOWN OF CROSS ROADS, TEXAS**

\_\_\_\_\_  
T. Lynn Tompkins, Jr., Mayor

August 21, 2023 Town Council Agenda Packet 252 of 255

**ATTEST**

---

Donna Butler, Town Secretary

**APPROVED AS TO FORM**

---

Matthew C.G. Boyle, Town Attorney

<b>Planning and Zoning</b>		
Council Liaison	Dave	Meek
	Scott	Bryant
	<b>Vacant</b>	
	Brian	Lagano
	Sylvia	Phillips
	Christian	Cook
alternate	Rodney	Hampton
alternate		

<b>Municipal Development District</b>		
Council Liaison (voting member)	Steve	Zuczek
	<b>Vacant</b>	
	Paula	Paus
President	John	Knox
	Ruben	Coronado

<b>Park Board</b>		
Council Liaison	Ron	King
Seat 2	Ron	Zohfeld
Seat 3; Secretary	David	Hancock
Seat 4	James	Knicker
Seat 5	<b>Vacant</b>	
Seat 6; Chair	Paula	Paus
Seat 7	Vacant	
Alternate 1	Vacant	
Alternate 2	Vacant	





## COUNCIL AGENDA BRIEFING SHEET

---

Meeting Date:

August 21, 2023

Agenda Item:

Discuss and consider issues related to the Mill Creek Road project.

Prepared by:

Kristi Gilbert, Town Administrator

Description:

At the January 17, 2023 meeting, Council awarded the Mill Creek Road Rehabilitation project to Anderson Asphalt & Concrete Paving, LLC in an amount not to exceed \$714,725.66. The project started mid-June with a goal of completion in 30 days. The Town Engineer, Halff Associates, has served as project manager for this project. There have been a handful of issues related to the project including contractor scheduling issues, unknown base failures, weather and areas planned for a two-inch mill and overlay of asphalt where two inches did not exist in the field. At the time of the production of the packet, the project is still underway and has gone over budget by approximately \$30,000 (this amount is subject to change). A representative from Halff Associates will be available to review the project challenges with the Council and for the Council to take action on payment over the project budget.

Recommended Action:

Receive an update from the Town Engineer and make any necessary appropriate budget adjustments.

Attachments:

None